TURKISH
Uniform with this volume and in the same Series

Teach Yourself Arabic
Teach Yourself Chinese
Teach Yourself Dutch
Teach Yourself English Grammar
Teach Yourself Good English
Teach Yourself French
Teach Yourself Everyday French
Teach Yourself German
Teach Yourself More German
Teach Yourself German Grammar
Teach Yourself Greek
Teach Yourself Hindustani
Teach Yourself Italian
Teach Yourself Latin
Teach Yourself Malay
Teach Yourself Norwegian
Teach Yourself Polish
Teach Yourself Portuguese
Teach Yourself Russian
Teach Yourself Spanish
Teach Yourself Swahili
Teach Yourself Swedish

In active preparation

Teach Yourself French Grammar
Teach Yourself Japanese
TEACH YOURSELF
TURKISH

By
G. L. LEWIS
M.A., D.Phil.
Lecturer in Turkish in the
University of Oxford

ENGLISH UNIVERSITIES PRESS LTD.
LONDON
INTRODUCTION

Turkish is a member of the Turkic branch of the Altaic family of languages, spoken by some fifty million people, from the south-east of Europe to the upper reaches of the Yenisei and the borders of China. The languages of this branch do not differ among themselves anything like as much as the languages of our branch of the Indo-European family. English, Dutch and Norwegian are all Germanic, but this fact would be small comfort to the Londoner who suddenly found himself in Amsterdam or Oslo. On the other hand, anyone who has mastered the contents of this book would find little difficulty in making himself understood in Adrianople, in the Turkish-speaking parts of Cyprus, in Chinese Turkestan or Samarkand.

Those who require a knowledge of Turkish for commercial, military, diplomatic or scholarly purposes will need no persuasion to awaken their interest. But there is a reason of another sort for learning the language. The structure of Turkish is simple and logical (it has only one anomalous verb and only one irregular noun); it is, moreover, quite different from the structure of the Indo-European and Semitic languages. Anyone who is seeking a new form of intellectual stimulus will find it a refreshing change to see how Turkish-speakers clothe the ordinary human thoughts and feelings in a completely new garb. Take for example this sentence: ‘The book which I have bought for you is on the table.’ The shape of this sentence remains the same in French, German, Spanish, Greek and even Arabic. But in Turkish it becomes: ‘You-for buy-in-the-past-pertaining-to-me book, table’s surface-thereof-at is.’

Turkish is an agglutinating language. A Turkish word consists of an unchanging root and one or more suffixes, each adding one idea to that of the root. For instance, lingua in Latin means ‘the tongue’, linguarum ‘of the tongues’, and it is not possible to say which of the added letters carries the idea of plurality and which the meaning ‘of’. Nor is a knowledge of this form linguarum of any assistance if we wish to translate ‘of the tongue’ (linguae) or ‘of the seas’ (marium). In Turkish, on the other hand,
we add -ler to indicate the plural and -in to express ‘of’. So, given that ‘tongue’ is dil and ‘sea’ is deniz, we can at once translate ‘of the tongue’ (dilin), ‘the tongues’ (diller), ‘of the tongues’ (dillerin), ‘of the seas’ (denizlerin) and so on. The same principle is followed throughout the language, so that if one opens a Turkish book at random one will see words like: elbisemizle, ‘with our clothes’, gelemiyecektik, ‘we should have been unable to come’; hürmetsizliklerine, ‘to their lack of respect’. Although the beginner may require several months of practice before he can agglutinate freely in conversation, he will find ample compensation in the ease with which the suffixes enable him to build new words from the roots he already knows.

Until 1928, Turkish was written in the Arabic script, which was inadequate to convey the sounds of Turkish. Thus the Arabic equivalents of the letters k-w-r-k stood for no fewer than five completely different words, now written kürk, kürek, gevrek, körük and körün. The need for a reform had long been discussed, but it took the enlightened despotism of Mustafa Kemal to introduce the Latin alphabet to Turkey and to outlaw the old Arabic script from public life. At the same time, official support was given to the move to rid the language of the numerous Arabic and Persian words which it had adopted over a period of centuries and to replace them by ‘genuine Turkish’ words, some resurrected from old texts, some imported from other Turkic languages, some constructed on the analogy of existing words, but a great many simply taken into the written language from the spoken language.

It is easy to poke fun at this policy, but in favour of it it must be said that the immense gulf which existed in the Ottoman Empire, between the language of the educated few and the language of the people, is intolerable in a democratic country. The language reform has done much to unite the Turks linguistically. Nothing is to be gained by adopting the ostrich-attitude and saying: ‘Okul (“school”) is a ridiculous hybrid, out of the Turkish oku-“to read”, by the French école. We shall ignore it and continue to use the good old Ottoman word mektep.’ Turkish children nowadays don’t go to mektep; they go to okul.

Hagopian’s Ottoman-Turkish Conversation-Grammar, published in 1907, devoted 215 pages to Turkish and 161 pages to Arabic and Persian. The student of modern Turkish has no more need to learn Arabic and Persian than the foreigner studying English has to learn Latin and Greek.
The aim of this book is to present a picture of the Turkish language as it is now generally spoken in Istanbul and written by the best contemporary Turkish stylists. For the most part the ‘pen of the janissary’s aunt’ type of sentence has been avoided; nearly all the examples have been chosen from modern Turkish books and newspapers.

It is not possible in a book of this size to give exhaustive wordlists, nor indeed is it desirable, because very few people are capable of learning a language by memorizing in advance all the words they are likely to need. An appendix of military terms has, however, been included, much of the information in which is not to be found in any other work. There is also a list of essential verbs which the reader will need to know, whether his business in Turkey concerns tobacco, Hittite tombs, microfilms of Arabic manuscripts or airfields.

My thanks are due to four people who were ungrudging of their help and encouragement to me in the writing of this book: to my wife, whose idea it was, to my friend and teacher Mr. Fahir İz, Lecturer in Turkish at the School of Oriental and African Studies in the University of London, who read the work in proof and made some valuable suggestions for its improvement, and to Mr. G. G. Arthur of H. M. Foreign Service and Major P. A. T. Halliday, Royal Hampshire Regiment, who both assisted greatly in the preparation of the Appendix.

I should like also to pay tribute to the skill and care shown by the staff of the English Universities Press Ltd., and their printers, Messrs. Richard Clay and Company Ltd., in dealing with a difficult manuscript.

G. L. Lewis
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Introduction</th>
<th>V</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Alphabet—The Sounds of Turkish—Vowel Harmony—</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changes in Consonants—Accent and Stress—Punctuation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Gender—Indefinite Article—Plural The Cases—Word Order</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Verb Endings—The Verb ‘ to be ’: Present Tense and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative—Personal Pronouns—Possessive Suffixes—The</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative Particle—Adjectives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Qualifying Nouns—Compound Nouns—The Verb: Infinitive—</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Essential Verbs—Past Tense—The Verb ‘ to be ’:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Tense—The Verb: Negative—‘ To have ’: var, yok—The</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suffixes -li and -siz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. The Verb: Present and Present-Past Tenses—Cardinal</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numerals—Demonstratives—Postpositions—‘ And ’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Adverbs—Adverbs of Place—The Suffix -ki—Comparison</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of Adjectives and Adverbs—Uses of the Ablative—The Verb:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future and Future-Past Tenses—Compound Verbs—‘ It’s</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raining ’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. The Verb: Aorist Tenses—‘ While ’—‘ As soon as ’—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordinal Numerals—Fractions—‘ Two each ’—The Suffixes -ci</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and -lik—Uses of the Dative—Verbs, Transitive and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intransitive—Months of the Year</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Participles and Verbal Nouns—Use of the Participles—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogatives—Postpositional Expressions—asiri—The</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb: Imperative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. The Verbal Noun—Uses of the Verbal Noun—Indefinite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronouns and Adjectives—‘ Self ’—Telling the Time</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ix
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9. The <em>imiş</em> Form of the Verb 'to be'—The <em>-miş</em> Tense of Other Verbs—The Pluperfect Tense—The Passive and the Reflexive Verb—Money, Weights and Measures—'A glass of water'—The Locative Case</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. The <em>-dik</em> Past Participle—The Relative Participles—Negative Sentences—'Can'—Adverbs of Place</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. The Reciprocal or Co-operative Verb—The Causative Verb—Uses of <em>denek</em>—'Must'—'So-and-so'—The Suffix <em>-iş</em></td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Uses of the Future Participle—'Too'—Conditional Sentences</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. The Verb: Subjunctive—<em>ki</em>—Points of the Compass—Adverbial Forms of the Verb</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Adverbs of Time—The Suffix <em>-cesine</em>—<em>bir</em>—The Third-Person Possessive Suffix—Other Useful Adverbs, Conjunctions and Particles—The Suffixes <em>-esi</em> and <em>-daş</em>—Diminutives—'The Suffix <em>-eri</em></td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. How to Read Turkish—For Further Reading—Poetic and Conversational Word-Order—Slang—Summary of Verbal Forms</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Appendix: Glossary of Military Terms—Table of Ranks—Military Extracts | 154 |

Key to Exercises | 162 |

Index of Suffixes | 174 |
The Turkish alphabet is made up of eight vowels and twenty-one consonants. For quickness of reference a rough guide to pronunciation is given against each letter. It is essential to supplement these indications by reading carefully the more detailed notes which follow.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Approximate pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>as in French avoir, Northern English man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>as in English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>ce</td>
<td>j in jam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ğ</td>
<td>ğe</td>
<td>ch in church</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>de</td>
<td>as in English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>as in bed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ğ</td>
<td>ğe</td>
<td>as in goat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>yumuşak ğe</td>
<td>sometimes lengthens a preceding vowel and sometimes pronounced like y in yet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>as in house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>something like the u in radium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>je</td>
<td>as in French jour, like s in leisure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>ke, ka</td>
<td>as in king</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>le</td>
<td>as in English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>””</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>ne</td>
<td>””</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>like French eau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ō</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>as in German Konig, French eu in deux</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>pe</td>
<td>as in English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>as in ribbon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>as in sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ş</td>
<td>şe</td>
<td>sh in shall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>as in English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>as in push</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ü</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>as in German Fuhrer, French u in tu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>ve</td>
<td>as in English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>ye</td>
<td>as in yet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>ze</td>
<td>as in English</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Yumuşak ğe never occurs at the beginning of a word.
THE SOUNDS OF TURKISH

1. The notes which follow are not intended to be an exhaustive account of Turkish phonetics, but to help the student to attain an intelligible pronunciation without a native teacher. In this connection, it is worth remembering that there are regular short-wave broadcasts in Turkish, not only from Ankara but also from London and in the Voice of America programmes.

A minimum of phonetic symbols has been used in the descriptions of the sounds, so that the reader who knows nothing of phonetics will not be at a disadvantage.

VOWELS

2. Vowel Length

As a rule, Turkish vowels are short; for example, i ordinarily has the sound heard in the English bit [i], not that heard in machine [i:]. Note that in the phonetic transcription a colon shows that the preceding vowel is pronounced long.

The exceptions are: (1) short vowels are lengthened under certain conditions when followed by ̄ı or ̄ı (see §§ 19, 32). (2) In some Arabic and Persian loan-words an original long vowel is retained. Such vowels will be marked long in the Vocabularies thus: muhārebe, ‘war’. See also § 64.

3. Classification of Vowels

The differences between vowels are largely differences in tongue-position. Phoneticians speak of front or back vowels, the former pronounced with the middle of the tongue raised towards the highest part of the palate, the latter with the back of the tongue raised towards the velum (the soft back part of the palate). According to the amount of this raising of the tongue, vowels are described as high, higher-mid, lower-mid or low. Another distinction is between rounded and unrounded vowels, depending on whether or not the sound is produced with rounded, protruded lips. These terms must be kept in mind for when we come to deal with Vowel Harmony (§ 36).

4. a

Generally represents the low, unrounded, back vowel [o], much the same as the a in the French avoir or the Northern
VOWELS

English pronunciation of man. When long, it is pronounced like a in father.

Examples: yasak, ‘forbidden’; adam, ‘man’; adil [a:dil], ‘just’.

In some words, mostly of non-Turkish origin, a represents the low, unrounded, front vowel [a], much as in cat.

Examples: anne [anne], ‘mother’; lâzım [la:zîm], ‘necessary’.

5. e

Usually the lower-mid front vowel [e], much as in the English met.


Sometimes it represents the higher-mid front [e] (the French é), notably when lengthened, the resulting sound being the vowel of English they, but without the final i-glide heard in this word.

Examples: teyze [te:zê], ‘maternal aunt’; tesir [te:sir], ‘effect’.

6. i

The high, unrounded, intermediate vowel [i], which does not occur in English. If you spread your lips as if to say easy and then pronounce the first syllable of the word cushion, you will be saying the Turkish word kış, ‘winter’. Alternatively, try to pronounce the syllable dr, with the shortest possible vowel between the two consonants: the result should be very close to the Turkish dîr, ‘is’.

Examples: kart, ‘woman’; rühtü, ‘quay’; kapıda, ‘at the gate’.

7. i

The low, unrounded, front vowel as in pit or, when long, as in machine.

Examples: ip, ‘thread’; bir, ‘one’; iğne [i:nê], ‘needle’.

8. o

Usually represents the higher-mid rounded back vowel [o], like the French eau, a clipped version of the vowel-sound in the English moat, but without the final u-glide heard in this word.

Examples: on, ‘ten’; ot, ‘grass’; oğlan [o:lon], ‘boy’.

In words borrowed from French and in Turkish words
beginning with \( n \) or \( l \), \( o \) represents the lower-mid rounded back vowel [ɔ], as in English hot or French homme.

Examples: nokta [nɔktɔ], 'point'; Londra [lɔndɾa], 'London'.

9. ö

The lower-mid rounded front vowel [œ]. The tongue-position is the same as for \( [ɛ] \) (§ 5), but the lips are pucker ed. The sound is that of German ö in König, French eu in deux.

Examples: ömür, 'life'; ördek, 'duck'.

10. u

Generally represents the high, rounded, back vowel [u] as in push, with lips rounded and parted.

Examples: upuzun, 'very long'; uzak, 'far'.

In some words, particularly those beginning with \( l \) or \( n \) followed by \( u \), the \( u \) is pronounced [u], with the back of the tongue raised even closer towards the soft palate than for [u], and the lips only slightly parted, the resulting sound being similar to but shorter than the oo in loom.

Examples: numara [numaɾa], 'number'; nutuk [nutuk], 'speech'.

11. ü

The high rounded front vowel [y], the German ü in Fuhrer, French u in tu. If you pronounce the English word itch with rounded lips, you will be saying the Turkish word uç, 'three'.

Examples: üzüm, 'grapes'; yüz, 'hundred'.

12. ā, ā, ē, aa

(1) As will be explained in §§ 18 and 23, the circumflex accent is written over \( a \) and \( u \) to indicate that a preceding \( g \), \( k \) or \( l \) is palatalized.

(2) Used after these three consonants, the circumflex does not necessarily denote vowel-length. Elsewhere it does. Some writers use it over all long vowels in Arabic and Persian borrowings, but ordinarily it is used only where confusion might otherwise arise. Note especially these three words: hala [haɾa], 'paternal aunt'; hâlâ [haɾaː], 'yet'; halâ [halaː], 'void'.

(3) It follows that when it is necessary to differentiate between long and short \( a \) after a non-palatalized \( g \) or \( k \), the circumflex cannot be used. Instead, the length of the \( a \) is shown by writing it twice: kaatil [kaːtɪl], 'murderer', but katil [katɪl], 'murder'. 
CONSONANTS

13. b, p
   b and its unvoiced equivalent p are not so heavily aspirated as
   in English; i.e. they are produced with less emission of breath
   than is heard, for example, in the first syllable of poppycock.
   Examples: baba, ‘father’; pazur, ‘market’.

14. c
   Exactly like English j in jam.
   Examples: cep, ‘pocket’; Cava, ‘Java’.

15. ş
   Exactly like ch in church.

16. d, t
   In English, d and its unvoiced equivalent t are produced with
   the tongue touching the gums behind the top teeth. In Turkish
   these consonants are produced with the tongue touching the top
   teeth, and are more distinct than their English equivalents.

17. f, v
   The sounds of f and its voiced equivalent v are weaker than in
   English. The top front teeth lightly touch the inner side of the
   lower lip. Some speakers pronounce v as weakly as the English
   w, particularly when it occurs between u and a: yuva, ‘nest’;
   kavun, ‘melon’. Tavuk, ‘chicken’. is often seen written TAUK
   outside food-shops, an indication of how weak the v is in popular
   speech.

18. g, k
   (1) Before or after a back vowel (a, i, o, u), g and k have the
   sounds heard at the beginning of English go and come respectively.
   (2) Before or after a front vowel (e, i, ü, ü), the sounds of g and
   k are palatalized, that is, they are followed by a y-sound, like
   English g and c in angular, cure.
   Examples: göz [göz], ‘eye’; kürk [kürk], ‘oar’.
(3) In some words of Arabic and Persian origin, g and k are also palatalized before a and u, which are then marked with a circumflex accent: ā, ū.

Examples: kātip [k'ātip], ‘secretary’; mezkûr [mezḵūr], ‘aforementioned’; gâvur [g'âvur], ‘infidel, Giaour’. Distinguish carefully between kar, ‘snow’, and kâr [k'âr], ‘profit’.

(4) There is one regrettable complication: in Arabic borrowings the letters ki, which according to the rule stated in section (2) of this paragraph should be pronounced [k'î], may represent [ki]: e.g., hakikat, ‘truth’. Under the influence of the spelling, Turkish schoolchildren sometimes pronounce this word as [hak'ıkat]. To avoid confusion, some writers prefer the spelling hakîykat.

19. ğ

(1) When at the end of a word or followed by a consonant, ğ lengthens the preceding vowel.

Examples: dağ [da:ğ], ‘mountain’; ağda [a:ða], ‘in the net’; ığne [ı:ne], ‘needle’.

(2) When preceded and followed by a back vowel (a, i, o, u), the preceding vowel is lengthened and the following vowel is lost or almost lost, except when one of the two vowels is u, when both vowels are generally pronounced distinctly and the ğ may be heard as a faint [w].

Examples: uğur [uːr], ‘luck’; dağın, [daːɲ], ‘of the mountain’; soğuk [so̝uk] also [so̝k] and [souk], ‘cold’.

(3) When preceded and followed by a front vowel (e, i, ö, ü), ğ is normally pronounced as a weak y-sound, as in the English paying.

Examples: diğer [di̝jer], ‘other’; eğer [e̝jer], ‘if’.

(4) In a few words, notably dornek, ‘to beat’, and övme, ‘to praise’, the v is sometimes replaced by ğ in writing but not in pronunciation.

20. h

Turkish h is always clearly pronounced; it is not treated like the English h in hour, honour or dahlia. There is one exception: in the common masculine name Mehmet the h is not pronounced and there is a compensatory lengthening of the preceding vowel: [me̝mêmet].

Remember to pronounce separately each letter in the com-
binations *ph, sh and th*; e.g., the *ph* in *siúphe*, ‘doubt’, and *cephe*, ‘front’, is pronounced as in *slap-happy*, not as in *graph*; the *th* in *muthis*, ‘terrible’, as in *put-head*, not as in *pith*.

21. *j*

As in French *jour*, English *s* in *leisure*. Occurs only in borrowed words.

Examples: *jelátin* (a short), ‘gelatine’; *mujde*, ‘good news’.

22. *k*

See § 18.

23.

(1) In Turkish, as in English, *l* has two sounds, the ‘clear *l*’ of *least* (phonetic [ɫ]) and the ‘dark *l*’ of *told, wool* [ɬ]. In conjunction with front vowels *l* is clear; with back vowels it is dark. The distinction comes automatically to English speakers.


(2) In Arabic and other foreign borrowings, however, the clear sound of *l* can occur even in conjunction with *a* and *u*. In such cases a circumflex accent is placed over these letters: *ă, ā*. The function of this accent is the same as when it is used after *g* and *k* (§ 18); it shows that the consonant preceding the vowel so marked is followed by a *y*-sound. If we used this spelling device in English, we would write *lîrîd, ilîminûte, allûre*, but *lunatic*. The *y*-sound in Turkish is weaker than in these English examples, but is perfectly audible. Note that the vowel marked with a circumflex may be, but is not necessarily, long (§ 12).

Examples: *gelâli* [gelˈʎali], ‘cascade’; *Lâtîn* [lˈyatین], ‘Latin’; *malûm* [mâlˈyûm], ‘known’.

24. *m*

Exactly as in English: *anlâmûlum*, ‘I have not understood’.

25. *n*

Much like English *n*, to which it bears the same relation as do Turkish *d* and *t* to their English counterparts (§ 16): *nûzîn*, ‘why?’
26. \( p \)

See § 13.

27. \( r \)

Turkish \( r \) is pronounced with the tip of the tongue touching the ridge of gum behind the top teeth. It is never trilled. Unlike our \( r \), it is pronounced wherever it occurs in writing: compare English \textit{car} [k\( \partial \):] with Turkish \textit{kar} [k\( \partial \r].

28. \( s \)

Always as in English \textit{this}, never as in \textit{these}.


29. \( s \)

English \( sh \) in \textit{shall}.


30. \( l \)

See § 16.

31. \( v \)

See § 17.

32. \( y \)

(1) Initially or after a consonant, like our \( j \) in \textit{yes}.

Examples: \textit{yağ}, ‘oil’; \textit{Aya}, ‘Asia’.

(2) When preceded by a vowel in the same syllable, \( y \) loses most of its consonantal value and forms a diphthong.

Examples: \textit{sey}, ‘thing’ (cf. § 5); \textit{meyn}, ‘mine’ (explosive; the Turkish word is borrowed from the English, and is pronounced much the same); \textit{boy}, ‘stature’.

(3) Between vowels, \( y \) has a far weaker sound than otherwise: compare the English \( y \) in \textit{saying} with that in \textit{yet}.

Examples: \textit{cumhuriyet}, ‘republic’; \textit{bahtiyar}, ‘fortunate’.

(4) When \( y \) comes between a front vowel and a consonant, the vowel is lengthened.

Examples: \textit{öyle} [o:\( c \):le], ‘thus’; \textit{babasıyle} [boba\( s \):le], ‘with his father’.

33. \( z \)

As in English: \textit{zafer}, ‘victory’; \textit{zelzele}, ‘earthquake’.
34. The Glottal Stop

The sounds of Arabic include a glottal stop (‘hamza’) and a throaty gulp (‘‘ain’). These sounds, in Arabic words which have passed into Turkish, are pronounced alike as a glottal stop; the sound heard in place of the tt in the Cockney pronunciation of bottle, or before the o in India Office in the mouths of speakers careful to avoid the usual pronunciation Indiaroffice. The glottal stop is also heard at the end of the clipped American No!: the attempt to represent this abrupt closure of the breath has given rise to the spelling Nope!

In the new Turkish writing this sound is indicated by an apostrophe: san'at, ‘art’. But the glottal stop does not come naturally to Turks, and consequently there is a growing tendency to omit it, both from speech and from writing: sanat. It is retained when its omission would cause confusion with a similar word; e.g., telin, ‘of the wire’, but tel'in, ‘cursing’.

35. Doubled Consonants

Doubled consonants represent not two separate sounds but one on which the speaker dwells longer than he would on a single consonant. Compare the p-sound in lamp-post. Distinguish carefully between, e.g., eli, ‘his hand’, and elli, ‘fifty’, and remember that a black ace is not the same thing as a black case. See also § 44.

VOWEL HARMONY

36. The principle of vowel harmony pervades the whole of Turkish grammar, and is largely responsible for the musical quality which has caused the language to be described as ‘The Italian of the East’.

For the purposes of vowel harmony, vowels are classified as back or front, high or low, rounded or unrounded (§ 3), as shown in the table below. The finer distinctions are ignored. The

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Unrounded</th>
<th>Rounded</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
student will find it useful to copy the table on to a card, to avoid constantly having to turn back.

37. General Law of Vowel Harmony

If the vowel of the first syllable of a word is a back vowel, so, too, are the vowels of subsequent syllables.

If the vowel of the first syllable of a word is a front vowel, so, too, are the vowels of subsequent syllables.

Examples: (back) çalı şkan, 'industrious'; salıncak, 'swing'; dokuz, 'nine'; doksan, 'ninety'; olmadılar, 'they did not become'.

(Front) çekingen, 'shy'; gelincik, 'poppy'; sekiz, 'eight'; seksen, 'eighty'; ılmı, 'they did not die'.

Exceptions: (1) a small number of Turkish words, among the commonest being: anne, 'mother'; kardeş, 'brother'; elma, 'apple'; şı şman, 'fat'; hangi, 'which?'; and inanmak, 'to believe'.

(2) The six invariable suffixes -daş, -yor, -ken, -leyin, -mıtrak and -ki. The last is only a partial exception, as it does change to -kü after ü.

(3) Compound words. e.g., bugün (bu, 'this', and gün, 'day'), 'to-day'. The word obur, 'the other', is a good example of the force of vowel harmony. It was once o bir, 'that one', but the o rounded the i into ü, while the i turned the o into the front ö.

(4) Arabic and other foreign borrowings. Frequently there is a partial application of the principle even to these. For example, the English football term 'penalty' appears in Turkish not as penalti but as penaltı, the front i changing to back i under the influence of the preceding back a. The French épaulette becomes apole. The standard Turkish for 'bus' is otobüs, a phonetic spelling of the French autobus, but in vulgar speech the pronunciations otobüs and even otobos are heard, as the front ü does not come naturally after the two back o's. Similarly, the French vapeur, 'steamship', has become vapur, though the phonetic Turkish spelling would be vapor.

38. Special Law of Vowel Harmony

(1) Unrounded vowels are followed by unrounded vowels.

(2) Rounded vowels are followed by low unrounded or high rounded vowels.
39. Combining the general and the special laws, we arrive at the following:

\[
\begin{array}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
a & is & followed & by & a & or & ı \\
\hline
e & " & " & e & i \\
i & " & " & i & a \\
i & " & " & e & i \\
o & " & " & a & u \\
ö & " & " & e & u \\
u & " & " & a & u \\
u & " & " & e & u \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

Exception: \(a\) may be followed by \(u\) if the intervening consonant is \(b, p, m\) or \(v\); for example, \(tapu\), 'title-deed'; \(avuğ\), 'hollow of the hand'; \(abuk sabuk\), 'nonsensical'; \(yamur\), 'mud'.

It will be seen that \(o\) and \(ö\) occur as a rule only in the first syllable of Turkish words.

40. Vowel Harmony of Suffixes

It follows that the Turkish suffix, with the exceptions noted in § 37(2), has a chameleon-like quality; its vowel changes according to the vowel of the preceding syllable. For example, the suffix of the dative case, denoting 'to', is the appropriate low vowel. As \(o\) and \(ö\) do not occur in suffixes, the choice is between \(a\) (after back vowels) and \(e\) (after front vowels). Thus:

- \(ev\), house; \(ev-e\),* to the house
- \(otobüs\), bus; \(otobüs-e\), to the bus
- \(orman\), forest; \(orman-a\), to the forest
- \(vapur\), steamer; \(vapur-a\), to the steamer

We therefore say that the dative suffix is \(-e/-a\). We may use instead the notation \(-e^2\), meaning that the suffix is one of the two low, unrounded vowels, \(e\) or \(a\). Similarly, we may say that the suffix of the genitive case, denoting 'of', is \(-ın^4\); that is, it is one of the four high vowels plus \(n\): \(-ın\), \(-ın\), \(-un\) or \(-ün\). Thus:

- \(ev-ın\), of the house
- \(otobüs-ın\), of the bus
- \(orman-ın\), of the forest
- \(vapur-ın\), of the steamer

* Note that this word must be spelled \(eve\). Suffixes are never hyphenated in Turkish; hyphens are used in this book only to make clearer the process of word-building.
In the absence of any note to the contrary, it may be assumed that any suffix containing an \( \epsilon \) is subject to the two-fold mutation, while any containing an \( i \) is subject to the four-fold mutation.

41. Exceptional Vowel Harmony

There are a number of foreign borrowings, many of them ending in clear \( l \) (see §23), whose last syllables contain an \( a, o \) or \( u \), yet which take front vowels in their suffixes (although not all Turks are equally careful in this respect).

Examples: \( röle \), ‘rôle’; \( röle-ün \), ‘of the rôle’; \( saat \), ‘hour’; \( saat-in \), ‘of the hour’; \( mahsul \), ‘produce’; \( mahsul-ün \), ‘of the produce’.

Rather than give rules for recognizing such words, it will be simpler to indicate them in the Vocabularies thus: \( röl (-lü) \); \( saat (-ti) \); \( mahsul (-lu) \).

Changes in Consonants

42. Turkish words hardly ever end in the voiced consonants \( b, c, d \) or \( g \), and when these sounds occur at the end of foreign borrowings they change to the corresponding unvoiced \( p, ç, t \) or \( k \). Thus the Arabic for ‘book’, \( kitāb \), becomes \( kitap \) in Turkish; the masculine name \( Ahmad \) becomes \( Ahmet \). The French \( garde-robe \) appears as \( gərdrop \), ‘wardrobe, cloakroom’. The Persian \( rang \), ‘colour’, appears as \( renk \). The English \( bridge \) (the card-game) appears as \( bɾiç \). An increasing number of writers, however, prefer the spellings \( kitab \), \( Ahmed \) etc., though this does not affect the pronunciation.

43. When a suffix beginning with a vowel is added to some nouns of one syllable and most nouns of more than one syllable, ending in \( p, ç, t \) or \( k \), the final consonant changes to \( b, c, d \) or \( ɡ \) respectively. Thus with the possessive suffix of the third person \( -i^{4} \) (§40):

\[
\begin{align*}
kitap, & \text{ book; kitab-ı, his book} \\
ağaç, & \text{ tree; ağaç-ı, his tree} \\
armut, & \text{ pear; armud-ù, his pear} \\
ayak, & \text{ foot; ayağ-ı, his foot}
\end{align*}
\]

Nouns whose final consonants are not subject to this change will be indicated in the Vocabularies thus: \( renk (-gi) \), ‘colour’; \( et (-ti) \), ‘meat’; \( sepet (-ti) \), ‘basket’.

This means that the \( k \) of \( renk \) becomes \( g \) (not \( ɡ \)) before a suffix
beginning with a vowel, while the \( t \) of \textit{sepet} and of \textit{et} remains unchanged.

The change occurs less regularly in verbs. Consequently, in the Vocabularies verbs which \textit{are} subject to this change will be indicated, thus: \textit{etmek (ed-)}, ‘to do’. Verbs not specially noted do not change the final consonant of their stem.

44. If a suffix beginning with \( c, d \) or \( g \) is added to a word ending in an unvoiced consonant (\( ç, f, h, k, p, s, š \) or \( t \)), the initial \( c, d \) or \( g \) of the suffix is unvoiced, changing to \( ç, t \) or \( k \).* For example, the suffix \textit{-dir} means ‘is’:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{kitab-ı-dir}, it is his book; \textit{kitap-tur}, it is the book
  \item \textit{armud-u-dir}, it is his pear; \textit{armut-tur}, it is the pear
  \item \textit{sepet-i-dir}, it is his basket; \textit{sepet-tır}, it is the basket
  \item \textit{otobüs-ü-dir}, it is his bus; \textit{otobus-tür}, it is the bus
\end{itemize}

45. Doubled consonants at the end of Arabic borrowings are reduced to single consonants in Turkish. Thus the Arabic \textit{haqq}, ‘right’, appears as \textit{hak}. When followed, however, by a suffix beginning with a vowel, the doubled consonant is preserved: \textit{hakka}, ‘his right’. Such words will be shown thus: \textit{hak (-kki)}.

46. Two consonants do not come together at the beginning of Turkish words, and there is a tendency in speech and writing to separate two consonants at the beginning of foreign borrowings; so for ‘train’ we find \textit{tren} as well as \textit{tren}, for ‘club’ \textit{kulup} as well as \textit{klup}. \textit{Şilep}, ‘cargo-boat’, is the German \textit{Schlepp}.

Sometimes instead, a vowel, usually \( i \), is added before two initial consonants: \textit{istembot}, ‘small steamboat’; \textit{isterlin}, ‘pound sterling’; \textit{Istav}, ‘Slav’.

47. There are some twenty common words of two syllables in which the vowel of the second syllable drops out when a suffix beginning with a vowel is added: e.g., \textit{isim}, ‘name’, \textit{ism-i}, ‘his name’; \textit{oğul}, ‘son’, \textit{oğl-u}, ‘his son’. See the example \textit{şehir} in § 63. Nouns of this type will be shown thus: \textit{oğul (-ğlu)}, ‘son’; \textit{şehir (-hri)}, ‘city’.

48. Arabic borrowings originally ending in the letter ‘ain

* This is a convenient but not strictly correct way of describing the phenomenon. It is wrong to regard the word for ‘is’, for example, as an original \textit{dir} which in certain circumstances changes to \textit{tir, dir, tur}, etc. It is accurate, though impossibly long-winded, to say that the Turkish for ‘is’ is a dental, voiced or unvoiced according to the nature of the preceding consonant, plus a high vowel, rounded or unrounded, back or front, according to the nature of the preceding vowel, plus \( r \).
are regarded as ending as a consonant. The possessive suffix of the third person (§43), -i₄, takes the form -si₄ after vowels, e.g., gemi-si, 'his ship'. But 'his mosque' is cami-i, 'his subject' is mevzu-u, 'his square' is murabba-i, all these words originally ending in 'ain (cami', mevzu', murabba'). Already, however, a great many people say camisi for 'his mosque', and it is probable that this rule will not outlive the generation who were brought up in the time of the Arabic alphabet and remember the original spelling.

**ACCENT AND STRESS**

49. The problem of accent and stress in Turkish is an involved one, to give a full account of which would result in something resembling an opera-score. The simple rule is that the stress falls on the first syllable but that there is a more obvious tonic accent, i.e., a rise in the pitch of the voice, usually on the last syllable; compare the way we say 'Really?' to express incredulity, with the stress on the first syllable but an unmistakable rise in pitch on the last. It is this rise in pitch that will be referred to as 'the accent'.

The chief exception to the rule is that place-names are hardly ever accented on the last syllable. The accented syllable of place-names and of other words not conforming to the rule will be shown thus: Paris; İngiltere, 'England'; yalnız, 'only'.

Unless otherwise indicated, if the accent comes on the last syllable of a word it remains at the end, even if the word is lengthened by the addition of suffixes: ordu, 'army'; ordumuz, 'our army'; ordumuzda, 'in our army'. But in words where the accent is on a syllable other than the last, it remains on that same syllable: Türkiye, 'Turkey'; Türkîyede, 'in Turkey'.

**PUNCTUATION**

50. It is usual to put a comma after the subject, especially when it comes at the beginning of a long sentence. A comma is often found where we would use a semicolon. Three dots (...) are used far more frequently than in English to show that a thought has not been completely expressed.

Reported speech is not always enclosed in quotation-marks, and Turkish printers seem to prefer the Continental type of arrow-head quotation-marks.
The apostrophe, in addition to representing the glottal stop (§34), is also used to separate names, particularly foreign names, from any grammatical endings that may be attached, to make it clear how much is name and how much is suffix. Thus: 

*Holivud'a*, 'to Hollywood'; *Honolulu'da*, 'in Honolulu'; *Gandhi' nin*, 'Gandhi's'; *Stalin' in*, 'Stalin's'.

The most disconcerting trick of punctuation is the use of brackets round book-titles, foreign words or words specially emphasized, where we would use inverted commas or italics: *Tank sayısı (15.000) i geçmişir*, 'The number of tanks has passed 15,000'.
51. Gender

There is no distinction of gender in Turkish grammar. The pronoun of the third person, for example, _a_ means 'he', 'she' or 'it' according to the context. To save space, the alternatives will not be noted every time. When, for instance, _oldu_ is given as meaning 'he became', the reader must bear in mind that it may also mean 'she became' or 'it became'. Similarly, _yeri_, 'his place', may also be 'her place' or 'its place'.

52. The Indefinite Article

The indefinite article 'a' is the same as the word for 'one': _bir_. _Bir ev_, 'a house'; _bir goz_, 'an eye'.

53. The Plural Suffix

The sign of the plural is _-ler/-lar_ added directly to the noun before any other suffix:

- _er_, house; _evler_, houses
- _kiz_, girl; _kizlar_, girls
- _goz_, eye; _gozler_, eyes
- _elma_, apple; _elmlalar_, apples

In such expressions as 'to write letters', 'to sell newspapers', 'to smoke cigarettes', the plural suffix is not used, the noun in the singular denoting the class, as in 'to hunt tiger'; 'does the baby cat egg?'; not one egg or a plurality of eggs, but egg in general.

54. The Cases

There are five case-suffixes which may be added to a Turkish noun or pronoun to show its relation to the other words in the sentence, but the student need not fear that he will have to master a vast battery of declensions such as intimidate the beginner in German or Latin. As has been briefly explained in the Introduction, the suffixes of Turkish are regular and, apart from the changes due to vowel harmony and consonant assimilation, invariable. The names of the cases familiar to students of
European languages will be used in this book, with two exceptions: instead of ‘nominative’ and ‘accusative’, we shall speak of the ‘absolute case’ and the ‘definite objective case’ (the latter abbreviated to ‘def. obj.’).

55. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

There is no word in Turkish corresponding to the English ‘the’, and only the context tells us whether or not to insert ‘the’ in translating into English:

çay pahalı-dır, tea is expensive
çay soğuk-lur, the tea is cold

56. THE ABSOLUTE CASE

A distinction is, however, made when a noun is used as the direct object of a verb. When the noun is indefinite it remains in the simple form:

çay içtik, we drank tea
bir adam gördüm, I saw a man
adamlar gördüm, I saw men

This simple form with no case-suffix, which may be either the subject or the indefinite object of a verb, we shall call the absolute case.

57. THE DEFINITE OBJECTIVE CASE

When the object of a verb is definite, i.e., when it is a proper name referring to a definite person, thing or place, or when the corresponding English word is preceded by ‘the’, by a demonstrative adjective such as ‘this, that, those’, or by a word denoting its possessor—‘I lost my book’; ‘She met her father’—so that we have no doubt about which person, place or thing is meant, it takes the def. obj. suffix -ı (§ 40):

çay-ı içtik, we drank the tea
adamin gördüm, I saw the man
adamların gördüm, I saw the men
Ahmed’ın gördüm, I saw Ahmet
İstanbul’un gördüm, I saw Istanbul
göz-ü gördüm, I saw the eye

If the noun ends in a vowel, a y is inserted as a buffer-letter, to keep the suffix distinct from the body of the word:

Ankara-yı gördüm, I saw Ankara
kahve-yı içtik, we drank the coffee
58. The Genitive Case

The genitive suffix, denoting 'of', is -ın⁴.

*yol*, road; *yol-ın*, of the road
*gün*, day; *gün-ın*, of the day
*Ahmed'ın*, of Ahmet, Ahmet's
*adam-ılar-ın*, of the men, the men's

With words ending in a vowel, *n* is used as buffer-letter before the genitive suffix:

*para*, money; *para-nın*, of the money
*kedi*, cat; *kedi-nın*, of the cat
*kuyu*, well; *kuyu-nın*, of the well
*köprü*, bridge; *köprü-nın*, of the bridge

*Note*: *Su*, 'water', has an irregular genitive *suyun* (not *-nın*), 'of the water'. The reason for this unique exception is that in Old Turkish the word ended in a *w*-sound and not in a vowel.

59. The Dative Case

The suffix of the dative case, denoting 'to, for', is -e/-a. As with the def. obj. case, the buffer-letter *y* is used to separate the suffix from a word ending in a vowel.

*Istanbul-a*, to Istanbul
*Ankara-ya*, to Ankara
*adam-a*, to, for the man
*adam-ılar-a*, to, for the men
*köprü-ye*, to the bridge
*köprü-ler-e*, to the bridges

The dative is the case of the indirect object, i.e., in 'Lend me the book', 'Tell her the time', 'Show him the way', 'Give a dog a bone', where we could insert 'to' before 'me', 'her', 'him' and 'dog', all these words would be in the dative case in Turkish.

60. The Locative Case

This case denotes 'in, on, at' and its suffix is -de/-da:

*ev-de*, in the house
*Istanbul-da*, in Istanbul
*otobüs-ler-de*, on the buses
*köprü-de*, on, at the bridge
61. THE ABLATIVE CASE

The suffix of the ablative case, denoting 'from, out of', is -den/-dan:

\textit{ev-den}, from the house
\textit{Ankara-dan}, from Ankara
\textit{Ahmet’ten} (§ 44), from Ahmet
\textit{kiz-lar-dan}, from the girls

62. SUMMARY OF CASE-ENDINGS

In the following table, the bracketed letters are the buffer-letters, occurring only after words ending in a vowel:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Last vowel of word in absolute case</th>
<th>e or i</th>
<th>o or u</th>
<th>a or i</th>
<th>o or u</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Definite objective</td>
<td>-(y)i</td>
<td>-(y)ü</td>
<td>-(y)i</td>
<td>-(y)u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive ' of'</td>
<td>-(n)in</td>
<td>-(n)ün</td>
<td>-(n)in</td>
<td>-(n)ün</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative ' to, for '</td>
<td>-(y)e</td>
<td>-(y)a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locative ' in, on, at '</td>
<td>-de</td>
<td>-da</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative ' from'</td>
<td>-den</td>
<td>-dan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the circumstances in which the locative and ablative suffixes begin with \textit{t} instead of \textit{d}, see § 44.

63. SOME MODELS

To illustrate the sound-changes explained in the previous chapter, the various cases of five nouns are here tabulated. It must be emphasized that there is no need for the student to learn these models by heart, so long as he is acquainted with the Summary given in § 62 and the sound-changes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>'bridge'</th>
<th>'dog'</th>
<th>'book'</th>
<th>'island'</th>
<th>'city' (§ 47)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Absolute</td>
<td>kopru</td>
<td>kopek</td>
<td>kitap</td>
<td>ada</td>
<td>şehir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definite</td>
<td>kopruyu</td>
<td>köpeği</td>
<td>kitabi</td>
<td>adayın</td>
<td>şehri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Objective</td>
<td>koprunun</td>
<td>köpeğin</td>
<td>kitabin</td>
<td>adanın</td>
<td>şehrin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>kopruye</td>
<td>köpeğe</td>
<td>kitaba</td>
<td>adaya</td>
<td>şehre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>koprüde</td>
<td>köpekte</td>
<td>kitapta</td>
<td>adada</td>
<td>şehirde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locative</td>
<td>koprüden</td>
<td>köpekten</td>
<td>kitaptan</td>
<td>adadan</td>
<td>şehirden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
64. Some loan-words with an original long vowel in the last syllable retain it when a vowel is added, but shorten it otherwise. Here for reference is a list of the commonest of such words:

- cevap, answer
- hal (-li), state, condition
- hayat (-ti), life
- lüzum, necessity
- zaman, time
- mahküm (u short), condemned
- mecruh, wounded

So hale, ‘to the condition’, has long a, while halde, ‘in the condition’, has short a; mecruhan, ‘of the wounded’, has the first u long, mecrughtan, ‘from the wounded’, has short u.

65. Word Order

(1) The subject of a sentence usually comes at the beginning, the verb at the end.

(2) A definite precedes an indefinite word: ‘I to the boy an apple gave’, but ‘I the apple to a boy gave’.

(3) English prepositions, ‘by, of, from, for’ and so on are represented in Turkish by postpositions or suffixes, that is, by separate words or added syllables following the word to which they refer: ‘from Ankara’, ‘for me’, become ‘Ankara-from’, ‘me-for’.

(4) Qualifying words precede the words they qualify: ‘that man’, ‘that tall man’, ‘that nearby standing tall man’. In such expressions as ‘far from town’, ‘bigger than you’; ‘from town’, ‘you than you’ qualify ‘far’ and ‘bigger’, so the Turkish order is ‘town-from far’, ‘you-than bigger’.

(5) Expressions of time precede expressions of place, just after the subject at the beginning of a sentence. The student will find it useful to memorize the following model of a common type of Turkish sentence: ‘Ahmet to-day town-in me-to a story told’.
Vocabulary 1 *

**Ahmet**, Ahmet (male name)  
İngiltere, England  
İstanbul or İstanbul, Istanbul (formerly Constantinople)

*aldım*, I took, bought  
*İstanbul* or *İstanbul*, Istanbul  
*Kahve*, coffee, café

*Ankara*, Ankara (capital city of Turkey)  
*Kız*, girl, daughter  
*Köprü*, bridge

*Bir*, a, an  
*Otobü*̂s, bus

*Cay*, tea  
*Para*, money

*Çocuk*, child  
*Şehir* (-hri), city

*Dün*, yesterday  
*Tren*, train

*Elma*, apple  
*Türkiye* or *Türkiye*, Turkey

*Ev*, house  
*Vapur*, steamer

*Gitti*, he went, has gone  
*Verdim*, I gave

*Gördüm*, I saw  

*İçtik*, we drank  

Exercise 1

(A) Translate into English:  
(1) köprüden; evlerin; kıza; paradan; vapurda; otobüsler.  
(2) Evde çay içtim.  
(3) Kızlar gördüm; kızları gördüm.  
(4) Ahmet dün Ankara'ya gitti.  
(5) Dün köprüde Ahmed'i gördüm.  
(6) Vapur, İngiltereden Türkiye'ye gitti.  
(7) Otobüs İstanbul'a gitti.  
(8) Kızdan kahveyi aldım.  
(9) Vapurda bir çocuk gördüm.  
(10) Çocuğa bir elma verdim.  
(11) Elmayı bir çocuğa verdım.  
(12) Çocuk şehre gitti.

(B) Translate into Turkish:  
(1) In the café; from the steamer; in England; to the bridge; from a child.  
(2) I took the money from Ahmet yesterday in the train.  
(3) I gave the girls tea.  
(4) I gave the children the apples.  
(5) The steamer went from Istanbul to England.  
(6) I saw the girls yesterday in the bus.  
(7) We drank a coffee on the steamer.  
(8) The child went from the steamer to the train.

* This vocabulary contains all words used in Exercise 1. Subsequent exercises, however, will use words which have been given in the course of the lessons and only the most useful of which will be repeated in the vocabularies.
LESSON TWO

66. Verb Endings

There are four sets of personal endings used with various parts of the Turkish verb. They are tabulated here for reference; only Type I need be learned at this stage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Type I</th>
<th>Type II</th>
<th>Type III</th>
<th>Type IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st Person ‘I’</td>
<td>-im</td>
<td>-m</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>-yim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Person ‘Thou’</td>
<td>-sin</td>
<td>-n</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-sin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Person ‘He’</td>
<td>(-dir)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-sin</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st Person ‘We’</td>
<td>-iz</td>
<td>-k</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>-lim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Person ‘You’</td>
<td>-simiz</td>
<td>-miz</td>
<td>-in, -iniz</td>
<td>-siniz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Person ‘They’</td>
<td>-(dir ler)</td>
<td>-ler</td>
<td>-siner</td>
<td>-ler</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* There is no 1st Person of Type III.

67. The Verb ‘to be’: Present Tense

(1) The Type I endings form the present tense of the verb ‘to be’. They are all suffixes, not independent words, and are subject to the fourfold vowel harmony, except of course for the -ler/-lar of the 3rd person plural.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>After e or i</th>
<th>After a or i</th>
<th>After ə or ұ</th>
<th>After o or ʊ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
<td>-(y)im</td>
<td>-(y)im</td>
<td>-(y)um</td>
<td>-(y)um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thou art <em>(see Note)</em></td>
<td>-sin</td>
<td>-sin</td>
<td>-sun</td>
<td>-sun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He is</td>
<td>-dir</td>
<td>-dir</td>
<td>-dər</td>
<td>-dər</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We are</td>
<td>-(y)iz</td>
<td>-(y)iz</td>
<td>-(y)uz</td>
<td>-(y)uz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are</td>
<td>-simiz</td>
<td>-simiz</td>
<td>-sunuz</td>
<td>-sunuz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are</td>
<td>-(dir ler)</td>
<td>dir(lar)</td>
<td>-dur(ler)</td>
<td>-dur(lar)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These endings are unaccented: evde-yiz, ‘we are in the house’; Türk-üm, ‘I am Turkish’. Note that after a vowel, y is inserted before -im and -iz.

(2) In written Turkish, -dir(ler) translates ‘is, are’: Ahmet
Lesson Two

evde-dir, 'A. is at home'; çocuklar Ankara'da-dırlar, 'the children are in Ankara'. But in the latter example, as the plurality of the subject is already shown by the -lar of çocuklar, it is enough to write çocuklar Ankara'da-dır. We shall meet other examples of this tendency towards economy in the use of suffixes.

(3) In the spoken language it is not necessary to use -dir(ler) at all in such sentences; the juxtaposition of subject and predicate is enough: Ahmet evde; çocuklar Ankarada. In speech, Ahmet evdedir means not 'A. is at home' but 'A. must be at home'. But in statements of permanent validity, -dir(ler) is used in speech as well as in writing: Demir ağır-dır, 'Iron is heavy'; Londra İngiltere'de-dir, 'London is in England'.

(4) It is usual for an inanimate plural subject to take a singular verb; i.e., in Turkish, people are, things is. An animate plural subject may also take a singular verb, if it represents a number of people acting in a body.

Note: The 'thou' form is used like the French tu, when addressing intimate friends, relations, children or animals. It is best avoided by beginners.

68. The Verb 'to be': Negative

The negative of 'to be', with certain exceptions to be noted later, is expressed by the word değil, 'not', with the Type I endings:

değilim, I am not          değiliz, we are not

değilsin, thou art not    değilsiniz, you are not

değil(dir), he is not     değil(dirler), they are not

With the omission of -dir (§ 67 (3)), 'they are not' may be değil.

değil also translates 'not' without a verb: Ahmet değil Orhan gitti ('Ahmet not, Orhan went'), 'It wasn't A., it was O. who went'.

69. The indefinite article bir is less frequent than its English equivalent; for example, it is not necessary to use it in negative sentences: çocuk değil, 'he is not (a) child', or with nouns denoting one's occupation, station in life or nationality: İngiliz-im, 'I am (an) Englishman'; asker-siniz, 'you are (a) soldier'. The reason is that bir really means 'one'; if he is not of the class 'child', it is superfluous to say that he is not one single member of that class. So, too, I cannot be more than one Englishman; you are
obviously not more than one soldier. Compare the French vous êtes soldat.

70. Personal Pronouns

\[
\begin{array}{llll}
\text{I} & \text{ben, I} & \text{thou} & \text{he, she, it} \\
\text{of me} & \text{beni} & \text{thee} & \text{of him, etc.} \\
\text{to me} & \text{bAnA} & \text{to thee} & \text{he, you} \\
\text{in me} & \text{bende} & \text{in thee} & \text{he, you} \\
\text{from me} & \text{benden} & \text{from thee} & \text{he, you} \\
\text{we} & \text{biz, we} & \text{you} & \text{he, she, it} \\
\text{us} & \text{bizi} & \text{you} & \text{he, she, it} \\
\text{of us} & \text{biziM} & \text{of you} & \text{he, she, it} \\
\text{to us} & \text{bize} & \text{to you} & \text{he, she, it} \\
\text{in us} & \text{bilde} & \text{in you} & \text{he, she, it} \\
\text{from us} & \text{bizden} & \text{from you} & \text{he, she, it}
\end{array}
\]

As verb-endings change according to the person, these forms are used mainly for emphasis: _ben tembel değilim, siz tembelsiniz, 'I'm not lazy, you are lazy'.

Of these pronouns, only _siz_ is quite regular. The others show certain irregularities, which are printed in capital letters in the following table:

It will be seen that 'he' has an _n_ before the case-suffixes and before the _-lar_ of the plural. This _n_ turns up in the declension of other pronouns, and is referred to as the 'pronominal _n_'.

'I' and 'we' have an _m_ instead of the usual _n_ in the genitive case.

'I' and 'thou' shift from the front- to the back-vowel class in the dative.

_siz_ means 'you', singular and plural (§ 67, Note), and _biz_, 'we', is sometimes colloquially used for 'I'. When more than one person is referred to, these words may take the plural suffix: _bizzer_, 'we'; _sizler_, 'you'.

71. Possessive Suffixes

Possession or relationship—'my friend, their work, its development'—is indicated by the following suffixes, which have slightly
different forms according to whether they follow a vowel or a consonant. Note the unusual buffer-letter s of the 3rd-person-singular suffix.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>After consonants</th>
<th>After vowels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>-im^4</td>
<td>-m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thy</td>
<td>-i'n</td>
<td>-n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his</td>
<td>-i1</td>
<td>-si^4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our</td>
<td>-imiz^4</td>
<td>-miz^4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>-iniz^4</td>
<td>-niz^4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their</td>
<td>-leri/-lari</td>
<td>-leri/lari</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

göz-üm, my eye
kız-un, thy daughter
kol-u, her arm
otomobil-imiz, our car
çoçuklar-imiz, your children
dükkan-lari, their shop
baba-m, my father
anne-n, thy mother
para-st, his money
ordu-muz, our army
oda-niz, your room
kedi-leri, their cat

Case-endings follow these suffixes: gözüm-de, ‘in my eye’; ordumuz-a, ‘to our army’; çoçuklariniz-dan, ‘from your children’. An n (§ 70: ‘pronominal n’) is inserted before any case endings that may be attached to the ‘his’ and ‘their’ suffixes: kol-u-n-a, ‘to her arm’; para-st-n-dan, ‘from his money’; dükkân-lari-n-da, ‘in their shop’; kedi-leri-n-in, ‘of their cat’.

evleri can mean ‘his houses’ (evle:-i) or ‘their house’ (ev-leri). Further, when -leri, ‘their’, is added to a plural noun, one ler drops out. So evleri can also mean ‘their houses’.

Except in the absolute case, there is no distinction of spelling or pronunciation between the ‘th-‘ suffix and the ‘his’ suffix following a consonant: ev-in-e, ‘to thy house’; ev-i-n-e, ‘to his house’. kardeş-in-in, ‘of thy brother’; kardeş-i-n-in, ‘of her brother’. For the way in which these ambiguities are avoided, see § 72 (3), (5).

Note: su, ‘water’, takes the form sup- before suffixes beginning with a vowel (cf. § 58, Note): suyu, ‘its water’, suyunuz, ‘your water’, but suları, ‘its waters, their water(s)’.

72. The Use of the Possessive Suffixes

(1) The function of the endings described in the previous paragraph is to show that the person or thing represented by the
word to which they are attached belongs to or is connected with some other person or thing: oda-stı, ‘his room’; kapi-stı, ‘its door’, yanlış-im, ‘my mistake’; akıl-ları, ‘their intelligence’.

(2) If the possessor is expressed by a definite noun (§ 57)—‘the Director’s room, the door of my house’—the possessing noun takes the genitive ending -in⁴ and precedes the possessed noun (cf. § 65 (4)): Müdür-ün odası; ev-im-in kapısi (‘of-the-Director his-room’; ‘of-my-house its-door’). This construction will be referred to as the Possessive Relationship.

(3) The genitive case of a personal pronoun may be used similarly, either to avoid ambiguity or for emphasis: benim ev-im, ‘my house’; onun evinde, ‘in his house’; senin evinde, ‘in thy house’.

(4) But if the possessor is not definite, it remains in the absolute form: misafir odası, ‘guest-room’ (which does not belong to any specific guest); ev kapısi, ‘house-door’. This construction will be referred to as the Qualifying Relationship.

(5) In such a phrase as ‘the girls’ room’, theoretically ‘of-the-girls their-room’, kızlar-ın oda-ları, the plurality of the possessor is already shown by the lar of kızların, so instead we find kızların oda-stı (‘... her-room’). Cf. § 67 (2). ‘The girls’ rooms’, however, must be kızların oduları.

(6) In the colloquial, the genitive forms of the pronouns of the first and second persons may be used instead of the possessive suffixes: benim oda (‘of-me the room’), ‘my room’; bizim köy, ‘our village’; senin ev, ‘thy house’; sizin sokak, ‘your street’. The literary forms would be (benim) odam, (bizim) köyümüz, (senn) evin, (sizin) sokakınız (§ 43).

The 3rd-person suffix, however, cannot be omitted: (onun) odası, ‘his room’; sokakları or onların sokağı (see (5) above), ‘their street’.

Note: ‘own’ is kendi: kendi evim, ‘my own house’; kendi odanız, ‘your own room’.

73. The Interrogative Particle

(1) To turn any word into a question, we put mi⁴ after it. The main accent in the sentence (except as shown in § 83 (1)) falls on the syllable before the mi, which itself is never accented. Consider the following sentences:

Bakan İngiltere-ye gitti. The Minister has gone to England.
Bakan İngiltereye gitti mi? Has the M. gone to England?
Lesson Two

Bakan İngiltereye mi gitti? Has the M. gone to England?
Bakan mı İngiltereye gitti? Has the Minister gone to England?

(2) In interrogative sentences consisting of an adjective or noun and part of the verb ‘to be’, such as ‘Are you tired?’ ‘Is her husband English?’ it is the tiredness or Englishness that is in question, not the person’s existence, so the mi follows the adjective or noun, not the ‘is’ or ‘are’: Yorgun mu-sunuz?
Kocast İngiliz mi-dir?

(3) değil mi? (‘Not?’) is used like the French n’est ce pas? to seek confirmation of a statement.
Vapur-u gördük, değil mi? We saw the steamer, didn’t we?
Güzel, değil mi? Pretty, isn’t she?
Ankaraya gitti, değil mi? He’s gone to Ankara, hasn’t he?

Note: The word müdürü may be either the noun meaning ‘director, administrator’ or the interrogative particle plus ‘is’ when following an ö or ü: Müdürü Türk müdürü? ‘Is the Director a Turk?’ In practice there is no likelihood of confusion, especially in conversation, as ‘director’, like most nouns, is accented on the last syllable, whereas neither mi nor dir are ever accented.

74. Adjectives

(1) Turkish adjectives are often used as nouns: genç çocuklar, ‘young children’; bir genç, ‘a young person, youth’; gençler, ‘the young’. Hastalı, ‘ill’; bir hasta, ‘a sick person, a patient’.

(2) Where English has the indefinite article plus adjective plus noun: ‘a big house, an intelligent girl’, Turkish as a rule says ‘big a house; intelligent a girl’: büyük bir ev, zeki bir kız, less commonly bir büyük ev, bir zeki kız.

(3) The attributive adjective always precedes its noun, as in English (‘black cat’) and never follows it as in French (chat noir).

Vocabulary 2

adam, man
aksam, evening
arkadas, friend
baba, father
bu, this
çaliskan, industrious
dükkan, shop

eski, old (of things), former (of people)
evet, yes
Galata, Galata (business quarter of Istanbul)
hayır, no
istasyon, railway-station
Exercises 2


(B) Translate into Turkish: (1) I bought this car from your father. It’s not very old. (2) The former Director went to Ankara yesterday evening, didn’t he? (3) My daughter has gone to our friend’s shop. (4) The police-station is not far from our house. (5) This is not your money. (6) I saw the Director’s daughter on the steamer this evening. (7) Your box is now on the train. (8) Her job isn’t very important. (9) Your friend’s father is a very industrious man, isn’t he? (10) Are you busy now?—Yes, I’m very busy.
LESSON THREE

75. Qualifying Nouns

(1) In English we can make one noun qualify another simply by putting the two nouns side by side: ‘hand-bag, pigskin, bombing-plane’. The Turkish practice is to put the two words in the Qualifying Relationship (§ 72(4)) and say ‘hand its-bag, pig its-skin, bombing its-plane’: el çanta-sı, donuz deri-sı, bombardsman uçağı (uçak, ‘aeroplane’). -(s)i is the hardest-worked suffix in the language, and its uses must be understood. Study carefully the following examples:

Çarşamba gün-ü (Wednesday its-day) Wednesday
1953 sene-si (1953 its-year) the year 1953
Nisan ay-sı (April its-month) the month of April
kılıç balığı (sword its-fish) sword-fish
elma ağacı (apple its-tree) apple-tree
çilek dondurma-sı (strawberry its-ice) strawberry-ice
yatak oda-sı (bed its-room) bedroom
telefón rehber-i (telephone its-guide) telephone-directory
kahve fincan-ı (coffee its-cup) coffee-cup
harp zengin-i (war its-rich) war-profiteer
Kibris ada-sı (Cyprus its-island) the island of Cyprus
İstanbul belediye-sı (I. its-municipality) the municipality of I.
Atlantik paktı (Atlantic its-pact) the Atlantic Pact.

(2) The plurals of such compounds are formed by inserting -ler before the possessive suffix: elma ağašları, ‘apple-trees’; harp zenginleri, ‘war-profiteers’; yatak odaları, ‘bedrooms’.

(3) The ‘its’ suffix is dropped if a possessive suffix is used to denote the possessor: yatak oda-m, ‘my bedroom’; yatak odanı, ‘your bedroom’. It follows that yatak odası may mean ‘his bedroom’ as well as ‘bedroom’; in the former event the device noted in § 72 (3) is employed: onun yatak odası.

(4) There are a few expressions which are written and treated as single words, although they were originally compounds of this
kind. The two preceding sections of this paragraph do not apply to them. The commonest are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Binbaşi</th>
<th>(thousand its-head)</th>
<th>Major</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yüzbaşı</td>
<td>(hundred its-head)</td>
<td>Captain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Onbaşi</td>
<td>(ten its-head)</td>
<td>Corporal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ayakkabı</td>
<td>(foot its-cover)</td>
<td>footwear, shoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>denizaltı</td>
<td>(see § 78)</td>
<td>submarine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples: Binbaşılıar, ‘Majors’; Yüzbaşıya, ‘to the Captain’; çocukun ayakkabısı, ‘the child’s shoes’; denizaltıda, ‘in the submarine’.

Note: Place-names consisting of two words in the Qualifying Relationship tend to lose the possessive -(s)i: Topkapı was once Top-kapısı (‘gun its-gate’); Erenköyü is fast becoming Erenköy, so for ‘at E.’ one may hear Erenköyünde or Erenköyde.

76. It will be recalled that, when a noun represents the definite possessor of anything, it takes the genitive suffix (§ 72 (2)); domuz derisi, ‘pigskin’, but domuzun derisi, ‘the skin of the (specific) pig’; kuyu suyu-u, ‘well-water’, but bu kuyunun suyu, ‘the water of this well’; otomobil tekerlek-leri, ‘car-wheels’, but otomobilin tekerlekleri, ‘the wheels of the car’. Nevertheless, place-names are generally left in the absolute form as qualifiers, like the first elements in the examples in § 75, even when they might be regarded as possessing the following noun: İstanbul halk-i, ‘the people of I.’; Ankara sinemalarında, ‘in the cinemas of A.’; Türkiye Başbakan-i, ‘the Prime Minister of Turkey’. The use of the genitive case is, however, obligatory if the place-name is separated by another word from the noun it qualifies: İstanbul hayat-i, ‘Istanbul life’, but İstanbul’un sanat hayat-i, ‘the artistic life of Istanbul’; Semerkant çini-leri, ‘Samarkand porcelains’, but Semerkand’ın mavı çini-leri, ‘the blue porcelains of Samarkand’.

77. Where we use an adjective of nationality—‘English history, the Turkish Army, French literature’—Turkish uses a qualifying noun, generally identical with the noun denoting a person of the nationality concerned: İngiliz tarih-i (‘Englishman his-history’), Türk ordusu (‘Turk his-army’), Fransız edebiyat-i (‘Frenchman his-literature’).

Sometimes, however, there are two different nouns, e.g., bir Amerikalı, ‘an American’, but Amerikan ordusu, ‘the A. Army’.
78. Compound Nouns

The marks of a compound noun are that the elements composing it are written as one word and do not both retain their primary meaning.

Examples:

bu, this; gün, day: bugün, to-day
deniz, sea; alt-i, its-underside: denizaltı, submarine
hamam, lady; el-i, her-hand: havuzeli, honey-suckle
baş, head; bakan, minister: başbakan, Prime Minister
kara, black; yel, wind: kara-yel, North-west wind
dedi, he said; kodu, he put: dedikodu, gossip (noun)

Note that compound nouns not containing a verb are accented on the last syllable of their first element.

79. The Verb: Infinitive

The infinitive of the English verb is the form ‘to see, to go, to want’, etc. The Turkish equivalent ends in -mek/-mak: görmek, ‘to see’; gitmek, ‘to go’; anlamak, ‘to understand’; bulmak, ‘to find’. That portion of each infinitive to which the -mek/-mak is added (gor-, git-, anlam-, bul-) is known as the stem.

The infinitive is a noun, and may be the subject or object of a verb: ‘to run away seems cowardly’; ‘I want to sing’.

80. List of Essential Verbs

açmak, to open
almak, to take, buy, receive *
anlamak, to understand
aramak, to seek
atmak, to throw
bakmak, to look (with dative:
  ‘at, after’)
başlamak, to begin (with dative)
beğenmek, to like, approve of
beklemek, to wait, await, expect
birakmak, to leave
bilmek, to know, guess
bulmak, to find
çalısmak, to work, strive
cekmek, to pull
çikmak, to go out, go up
demek, to say
dinlemek, to listen, listen to
durmalı, to stand, stop
duymak, to feel, hear
düşmek, to fall
düşünmek, to think (about)
etmek (ed- § 13), to do
gleme, to pass
gelmek, to come
getirmek, to bring
girmek, to enter (with dative)
gitmek (gid-), to go

* In case of ambiguity, satın almak (‘to take by sale’) is used for ‘to buy’.
gondermek, to send  
gormek, to see  
hatrlamak, to remember  
 içmek, to drink, smoke  
istemek, to want, ask for  
 isitmek, to hear  
kalmak, to remain, be left  
kalmak, to rise, be removed, start (train, etc)  
kapanmak, to shut  
kayıbetmek ( -ed- ), to lose  
lakmak, to break  
körmak, koymak, to put, place  
konusmak, to speak, discuss  
koşmak, to run  
kullanmak, to use  
oonumak, to read  
olmak, to be, become, occur  
oturmak, to sit, live (dwell)  
okupmak, to learn  
ozamak, to die  
sanmak, to think, suppose  
satmak, to sell  
saymak, to count, esteem  
seçmek, to choose  
sevmek, to love, like  
sormak, to ask, ask about  
stilemek, to say, tell  
tanımlamak, to know, recognize  
taşınmak, to carry  
tutmak, to hold  
 uçmak, to fly  
unutmak, to forget  
uyumak, to awake  
uyumak, to sleep  
vermek, to give  
üzelmak, to strike  
yapmak, to make do  
yasaklamak, to live (be alive)  
yüzmek, to write  
yapmak, to eat  
vollamak, u, and  
yurumak, to walk
LESSON THREE

82. THE VERB ‘to be’: PAST TENSE

(1) Under the English verb ‘to be’ are included a number of words of different origins (be, am, is, are, was) and the same is true in Turkish. We have already met the present tense (§67). For the infinitive, olmak is used, which properly means ‘to come to be, become, occur, mature’. The past tense is based on a stem i-, to which are added the past suffixes shown in §81:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{idim, I was} & \quad \text{idik, we were} \\
\text{idin, thou wert} & \quad \text{idiniz, you were} \\
\text{idi, he was} & \quad \text{idiler, they were}
\end{align*}
\]

These forms, which are unaccented, are used either as independent words or, especially in conversation, as suffixes. In the latter case, the first i disappears after consonants and changes to y after vowels, the remainder of the word undergoing the fourfold vowel harmony.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{adam idi or adamı, it was the man} \\
\text{müdür idiniz or müdürünüz, you were the director} \\
\text{kitap idi or kitapçı (§44), it was the book} \\
\text{yorgun idik or yorgunduk, we were tired} \\
\text{sinemada idiniz or sinemadağdınız, you were at the cinema.}
\end{align*}
\]

(2) The interrogative mı usually combines with idim, etc.:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{hazır myydim (for mi idim), was I ready?} \\
\text{hazır myydın, wert thou ready?} \\
\text{hazır myydi, was he ready?} \\
\text{etc.} \\
\text{meşgul myydim (for mü idim), was I busy?} \\
\text{yorgun myydun (for mü idim), was I tired?} \\
\text{tembel myydın (for mi idim), was I lazy?}
\end{align*}
\]

Note: The past tense of olmak, ‘to become’, is regular: oldum, oldun, oldu, etc. So asker olmak means ‘to be or to become a soldier’, but asker idim (askerdim), ‘I was a soldier’; asker oldum, ‘I became a soldier’.

83. THE VERB: NEGATIVE

(1) The negative of all verbs, except for those parts of ‘to be’ which are based on the stem i-, is made by adding me/ma to the stem. To the negative stem so formed are added tense-
other suffixes. The main accent in the sentence comes on the syllable before the me/ma.

istemek, to want; istedim, I wanted
istememek, not to want; istemedim, I did not want
bakmak, to look; baktınız, you looked
bakırmak, not to look; bakırdınız, you did not look
olmak, to become; oldum, I became
olımmak, not to become; olımadım, I did not become

(2) The past tense of olımmak when it means ‘not to be’, in other words, the negative of idiım (§ 82) is:

deqıl idiım or deqıldıım, I was not
deqıl idın or deqıldın, thou wert not
deqıl idi or deqıldı, he was not
deqıl idık or deqıldık, we were not
deqıl idınız or deqıldınız, you were not
deqıl idıler or deqıldıler or deqılderdi, they were not

(3) The negative interrogative is formed as explained in §§ 73, 82 (2): Bakırdınız mı? ‘Didn’t you look?’ Olımadın mı? ‘Didn’t I become?’ Hazır deqıl mıydık? ‘Weren’t we ready?’

84. ‘To Have’—Var, Yok

The words var and yok (‘existent’ and ‘non-existent’) are used for ‘there is’ and ‘there is not’, respectively: Bu şehirde yıı bir otel var mı? ‘Is there a good hotel in this city?’ Odameda su yok, ‘There’s no water in my room’. These two words are employed where English uses the verb ‘to have’, thus: Bir kardeş-im var (dir) (‘a my-brother existent is ’), ‘I have a brother’; iş-inıız yok mu? (‘your-work non-existent? ’), ‘Have you no work?’.

Answer: var, ‘I have’, or yok, ‘I have not’. Para-m yok, ‘I have no money’. An alternative translation for this is ben-de para yok (‘in-me money non-existent’). The latter does not denote such absolute penury as param yok, but means rather ‘ I’ve no money on me’.

Past tense: mudur-un otomobil-i yok-tu (‘the director’s car was-non-existent ’), ‘ the director had no car’; bir komşu-muz var-dı, ‘ we had a neighbour’.

Var, yok are used only in the present tense and with those parts of olmak based on the stem i- (see § 183). Otherwise the requisite part of olmak is used alone: ‘ we shall have a holiday ’ becomes ‘ an our-holiday will be ’.
Note: Distinguish between vardi (§ 82), ‘there was’, and vardi, ‘he arrived’, past tense of varmak.

85. The object of a verb is often not expressed when it is quite clear from the context: ‘He showed me the coat, but I didn’t like (it) so I didn’t buy (it)’. Numerous examples will be found in the Exercises.

86. The Suffix -li

(1) The addition of -li to a noun makes an adjective or noun meaning ‘characterized by or possessing whatever the original noun represents’. The resemblance to the English suffix -ly, as in shapely from shape, is a useful aid to the memory, but is sheer coincidence.

Bizans, Byzantium; Bizanslı, Byzantine
Londra, London; Londralı, Londoner
kýmut, value; kýmetsli, valuable
uzun boy, long stature; uzun boyolu, tall
orta, middle; orta boyolu, of medium height
mânâ, meaning; mânâlı, significant
rutubet, moisture; rutubetsli, moist, damp
ev, house, home; evli, married
köy, village; köylü, villager
sen, thou, ben, İ; sënsli bënsli, informally (cf. § 67, Note)
resim (-smi), picture: resimsli, illustrated

(2) -li is also added to adjectives of colour, thus: kirmizi, ‘red’; kirmizi, ‘dressed in red’.

(3) If -li is added to a phrase containing a qualifying noun the possessive suffix is dropped: Osman ad-ı (‘Osman its-name’), ‘the name “Osman”’; Osman ad-ı bir genç, ‘a young man named O.’ (‘O.-named’); 23 Nisan tarih-i (‘23 April its-date’), ‘the date 23 April’; 23 Nisan tarih-li mektub-unuz, ‘your letter dated 23 April’.

87. The Suffix -siz

-siz means ‘without’:
akil, intelligence; akılvisiz, stupid
son, end; sonsuz, endless
fayda, use; faysalsiz, useless
edeb, good breeding; edepsiz, ill-bred, mannerless
sen, thou; sensiz, without thee
o, he; o-n-suz (§ 70), without him

So kýmetsiz, ‘valueless’; mânasiz, ‘meaningless’.
Vocabulary 3

*ada*, island
*adres*, address
*ağaç*, tree
*anı, annee*, mother
*asıl, gerçek*, real, genuine
*bahçe*, garden
*basha, other, different
*bâsilca, chief, principal
*belki*, perhaps
*bile* (follows the word it modifies), even
*boş*, empty, vacant
*büyük*, great, big
*cumhuriyet* (-ti), republic
*çok*, many, much, a lot of
*devlet* (-ti), State
*efendi*, master
*eser*, work, effect
*fakat*, but

Fâtih, Conqueror (Sultan Mehmet II)

*halk* (-ki), people, the common people
*içi*, alcoholic drink
*inhisar*, monopoly
*iskele*, quay, landing-stage
*kapalı*, closed, covered

*kardeş*, brother or sister; *kız-kardeş*, sister
*Kaynak*, source, spring
*kazanç*, profit, gain
*kılık*, aspect, costume, ‘get-up’
*maalesef*, unfortunately
*memleket* (-ti), country, land
*müdür*, official, Civil Servant
*meyva*, fruit
*nüfün*, why?
*oda*, room
*oğul* (-gül), son
*otel*, hotel
*paltos*, overcoat
*pasaport* (-tu), passport
*perişan*, untidy, disordered
*polis*, police, policeman
*saat* (-ti), hour, watch, clock
*sabah*, morning
*sarı*, yellow
*sene, yıl*, year
*sergi*, exhibition, display
*sokak*, street
*şapka*, hat
*taşınmak*, to move (house)
*vakti* (-ki), time
*yatak*, bed

Exercise 3

(A) **Translate into English:**


* anne is used only in Istanbul Turkish, and then only in the literal sense; in provincial dialects and in metaphorical uses *ana* is used: *anahat*, ‘main line’; *anayöl*, ‘main road’.

(B) Translate into English: (1) Is your sister married? (2) He wanted to go to another hotel. (3) Is this cigarette-box new?—Yes, my mother gave it to me. (4) Perhaps he found our address in the telephone-directory. (5) Our apple-trees have given a lot of fruit this year, haven’t they? (6) The girl in yellow is Orhan’s sister. (7) We waited for her at the station but she didn’t come. (8) My sister wanted to buy their house, but I didn’t like it, it’s very damp. (9) Have you left your passport at the hotel? (10) The people is the real master of the country.
LESSON FOUR

88. THE VERB: PRESENT AND PRESENT-PAST TENSES

The suffix of the present is "yor, preceded by a high vowel (§ 36), i, i, u or ü, according to the nature of the preceding vowel:
gelmek, to come; geliyor, he is coming (or comes at this moment)
almak, to take; aliyor, he is taking
bulmak, to find; buluyor, he is finding
görmek, to see; goruyor, he is seeing

If the stem already ends in a high vowel, the "yor is added directly to it:
taşt-mak, to carry; taşt-yor, he is carrying
koru-mak, to protect; koru-yor, he is protecting

If the stem ends in a low vowel, this becomes the corresponding high vowel (see Note):

de-mek, to say; di-yor, he is saying
anla-mak, to understand; anla-yor, he understands
soyle-mek, to tell; soylu-yor, he is telling
kolla-mak, to observe; kollu-yor, he is observing

To the present base so formed are added the present or past of the verb 'to be' (§§ 57, 82) but not dir; the present base itself denotes the 3rd person singular. Consider the following:

Ahmet yorgun, Ahmet is tired; Ahmet geliyor, A. is coming
(Ben) yorgun-um, I am tired; (Ben) geliyor-um, I am coming
(Ben) yorgun-dum, I was tired; (Ben) geliyor-dum, I was coming

Here are the present and present-past tenses of gelmek. Note the accentuation.

geliyorun, I am coming  geliyordun, I was coming
geliyorsun, thou art coming  geliyordun, thou wert coming
geliyor, he is coming  geliyordu, he was coming
geliyorguz, we are coming  geliyorduk, we were coming
geliyorsunuz, you are coming  geliyordunuz, you were coming
geliyorlar, they are coming geliyorlardı or geliyordular, they were coming
As -yor is invariable (§ 37 (2)), these endings are the same for all verbs.

Note: These sound-changes are instances of the following rule (which like other rules is not universally obeyed): If a suffix beginning with ğ is added to a stem ending in ē or ā, the ē or ā becomes ī or ĩ respectively, unless both the vowel preceding the ē or ā and the vowel following the ğ are rounded, when the ē or ā becomes ĕ or ĭ.

89. The Present and Present-past Tenses: Negative

The endings given in the preceding paragraph may be added to the negative verb-stem, the final ē or ā of which is then subject to the changes described above:

al-ma-mak, not to take; almeyor, he is not taking
gör-me-mek, not to see; gormeyor, he is not seeing
taş-ma-mak, not to carry; taşmeyor, he is not carrying
de-me-mek, not to say; demeyor, he is not saying
anla-ma-mak, not to understand; anlameyor, he does not understand
söyle-me-mek, not to tell; söylemeyor, he is not telling

almeyorsunuz, 'you are not taking'; almeyordunuz, 'you were not taking'; gormeyorduk, 'we were not seeing'; söylemeyorum, 'I am not telling'. etc.

90. The Present and Present-past Tenses: Interrogative

The interrogative particle mi⁴ is placed after the present-base, except in the 3rd person plural of the present, when it follows the lar:

geliyor muyum, am I coming?; gelmiyor muyum, am I not coming?
geliyor musun, art thou coming?; gelmiyor musun, art thou not coming?
geliyorlar mı, are they coming?; gelmiyorlar mı, are they not coming?
geliyor muydum, was I coming?; gelmiyor muydum, was I not coming?
geliyor muydunuz, were you coming?; gelmiyor muydunuz, were you not coming?
91. NUMERALS: CARDINAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Turkish</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bir, one</td>
<td>on iki, twelve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iki, two</td>
<td>on üç, thirteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>üç, three</td>
<td>on dört, fourteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dört, four</td>
<td>on beş, fifteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beş, five</td>
<td>on altı, sixteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altı, six</td>
<td>on yedi, seventeen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yedi, seven</td>
<td>on sekiz, eighteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sekiz, eight</td>
<td>on dokuz, nınanteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dokuz, nine</td>
<td>yirmi, twenty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on, ten</td>
<td>yirmi bir, twenty-one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on bir, eleven</td>
<td>yirmi iki, twenty-two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>otuz, thirty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kırk, forty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>elli, fifty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>altmış, sixty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yetmiş, seventy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>seksen, eighty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>doksan, ninety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yüz, hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bin, thousand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>milyon, million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sıfır, zero</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) These numbers are compounded as in English, except that ‘and’ is not used: yüz otuz, ‘a hundred (and) thirty’; bin elli, ‘a thousand (and) fifty’.

In the numbers from eleven to nineteen, the accent is on the on. In compound numbers above twenty, it is the last syllable of the units figure which is accented: yirmi sekiz, ‘twenty-eight’; otuz altı, ‘thirty-six’; elli bir, ‘fifty-one’.

dört yüz otuz iki, ‘432’; bin on üç, ‘1013’; bin dokuz yüz elli üç, ‘1953’; yedi milyon yedi yüz yetmiş yedi bin yedi yüz yetmiş yedi, ‘7,777,777’ (Turks put a full stop after the thousands where we put a comma).

(2) Words preceded by a number do not normally take the plural suffix, as the use of a number greater than one necessarily implies plurality: otuz beş yıl, ‘thirty-five years’; iki çocuk, ‘two children’; yedi ada, ‘seven islands’; üç ay, ‘three months’.

So with kaç, ‘how many?’; kaç çocuk, ‘how many children?’

The exceptions to this rule consist in a few expressions relating to well-known things: yedi adalar, ‘the Seven (Ionian) Islands’; üç aylar, ‘the Three (Sacred) Months (of the Islamic year)’.

(3) Certain words, the commonest being tane (‘grain’), less commonly aded (‘number’), may be inserted between number and noun without affecting the translation (like the Pidgin English ‘piecec’): iki bilet or iki tane bilet, ‘two tickets’. If the noun is not expressed, tane must be used: Kaç bilet istiyorunuz?—Iki tane istiyorum, ‘How many tickets do you want?—I want two’. baş (‘head’) is often used in the same way when enumerating livestock: elli baş manda, ‘fifty (head) water-buffalo’;
otuz baş koyun, ‘thirty sheep’. Note also dört baş soğan, ‘four onions’.

(4) The rules of vowel harmony and consonant assimilation must be observed when writing figures: ‘from five to seven’, 
beş-ten yedi-ye, is written 5ten 7ye; from nine to sixteen’, dokuz-dan 
on altı-ya, is written 9dan 16ya. ‘In 1953’ is 1953te. In the 
example at the end of § 50, the i outside the bracket is the def. 
obj. case-ending of on beş bin-i, the number being the object of the 
verb geçmişir.

(5) ‘once, twice, three times’, etc. Use defa or kere, ‘time, 
occasion’: bir defa, iki defa, üç defa (bir kere, etc.).

(6) In, e.g., ‘one or two’, ‘or’ is not translated: Onu beş altı 
defa gördüm, ‘I’ve seen her five (or) six times’.

(7) kırk, ‘forty’, is used for an indefinitely high number, 
‘umpteen’: kırk yılda bir (‘in forty years one’), ‘Once in a 
blue moon’. Cf. § 160 (3).

Note (i): Besides ‘hundred’, yüz can mean ‘face’ or ‘cause’. 
N.B. iki-yüz-lü (§ 86), ‘two-faced’.

Note (ii): Dörtler (‘the Fours’) means ‘the Four Great Powers’.

92. DEMONSTRATIVES

(1) bu, this (next to the speaker), this which precedes  
şu, this, that (just over there), this which follows  
o, that (right over there or out of sight)

o is also used for ‘he, she, it’, and the table of declension of o 
at § 70 serves as a model for bu and şu as well; they add the 
pronominal n before suffixes: bundan, ‘from this’, šuna, ‘to that’, 
şunlar, ‘those’.

Like their English equivalents, these words are used as adjectives 
or pronouns:

o kitap, that book  
o başka, that (is) different  
bu saat-i buldunuz mu?, did you find this watch?  
bunu buldunuz mu, did you find this?  
şu askerler, those soldiers  
şunlar asker değiştir, those (people) aren’t soldiers

(2) böyle, thus, in this way, like this, such  
söyle, thus, in this way, like this, such  
öyle, thus, in that way, like that, such
The shades of meaning of these words are like those of \textit{bu}, \textit{sü} and \textit{o}. They may be used adverbially:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{böyle yaptı}, thus I did
  \item \textit{öyle düşünüyor}, that’s how he thinks
\end{itemize}

Or adjectivally:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{böyle bir adam}, a man like this
  \item \textit{söyle bir gün}, such a day
  \item \textit{öyle bir fırtına}, such a storm, a storm like that
\end{itemize}

93. Postpositions

In English, words such as ‘in’, ‘from’, ‘to’, ‘with’ are called prepositions because they precede the noun to which they refer. As we have seen, ‘of’, ‘to’, ‘from’, ‘at’ are represented in Turkish by case-suffixes attached to the end of a word. Other English prepositions are represented by postpositions; suffixes or separate words following the word to which they refer.

Some postpositions require the word they govern to have a case-ending; compare the English use of the objective case with prepositions: ‘to whom, by me, with him, like her’ (not ‘who, I, he, she’).

94. Postpositions with Absolute or Génitifive Case

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{ile}, \textit{-le/-la}, with, by means of
  \item \textit{kadar}, as . . . as
  \item \textit{gibi}, like
  \item \textit{için}, for
\end{itemize}

(a) The pronouns \textit{kim}, ‘who?’, \textit{ben}, \textit{sen}, \textit{o}, \textit{biz} siz, \textit{bu} and \textit{sü} (§§ 70, 92). but not the plurals \textit{onlar}, \textit{bizler}, etc., take the genitive ending before these postpositions. (b) Other words remain in the absolute form.

(a) \textit{kim-in ile (kiminle)}, with whom?
\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{bu-nun gibi}, like this
  \item \textit{o-nun kadar güzel}, as beautiful as she
  \item \textit{siz-in için}, for you
\end{itemize}

(b) \textit{baba-mız ile (babamızla)}, with your father
\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{bu adam gibi}, like this man
  \item \textit{o kız kadar güzel}, as beautiful as that girl
  \item \textit{sizler için}, for you
\end{itemize}

Note (i): \textit{ile}. In conversation the unaccented suffixed form \textit{-le/-la} is almost always used: \textit{vapur-la}, ‘by steamer’; \textit{tren-le}, ‘by train’. If attached to a word ending in a vowel, the form is \textit{-yle/-yla} (cf. \textit{idi}, § 82 (1)): \textit{ustura-yla}, ‘with the razor’; \textit{kedi-yle},
‘with the cat’. It combines with the 3rd-person suffix -(s)i4 to form an invariable -işte: kedi-şte, ‘with his cat’; babası-şte, ‘with his father’; gözi-şte, ‘with his eye’.

ile may be reinforced by beraber or birlikte, ‘together’: Ahmet-le beraber geldim, ‘I came, together with A.’; Kız- lar-la birlikte gittik, ‘we went, along with the girls’.

bununla beraber (‘together with this’) means ‘in spite of this, nevertheless’.

Note (ii): gibi. gibi may take plural or possessive suffixes: bu gibilər (‘these likes), people of this sort’; o adam-ın gibi-si-ni gördünüz mü? ‘Have you seen the like of this man?’

Note (iii): kadar. This word is originally a noun meaning ‘amount’. Used as a postposition without a following adjective it means ‘as big as’, ‘the size of’: bacak kadar bir çocuk (‘leg-child’), ‘a child the size of a leg, knee-high’. After a number it means ‘about’: on kadar uçak, ‘about ten aircraft’. Bu kadar means ‘this much’.

Note (iv): için. The suffixed form -cin is occasionally seen: senin-cin, ‘for you’. A common use of için is to express purpose, with the infinitive: onu gormek için geldim, ‘I came (for) to see him’. Compare ‘I’m off to Louisiana for to see my Susie-Anna’.

Some uses of için overlap those of the dative case: bunu size (or sizin için) aldın, ‘I bought this for you’. It also translates ‘of’ in ‘what do you think of him?’: onun için ne düşünüyorsunuz?

95. Translation of ‘ and ’

The general equivalent is ve, but to join two nouns or pronouns together ile is more common: anne-m-le baba-m, ‘my mother and my father’. ve is used: (a) before the last of a series of three or more words with the same grammatical function—annem, babam ve kardeşim, ‘my mother, my father and my brother’; (b) between two adjectives: akıllı ve çalışkan bir talebe, ‘an intelligent and industrious student’; (c) to join two main verbs—dükkan-a gitti ve hibrit alıdık, ‘he went to the shop and bought matches’.

dere/da, properly ‘also’, may often be rendered ‘and’. This word must not be confused with the locative suffix; ‘also’ is a separate word, and is never accented, while the locative suffix is written as part of the word it belongs to, and may be accented: siz de, ‘you also, and you’; size de, ‘in you’.

A de B de means ‘both A and B’.
**Vocabulary 4**

- **Days of the Week**
  - **pazar**, Sunday
  - **pazartesi**, Monday
  - **salı**, Tuesday
  - **çarşamba**, Wednesday
  - **perşembe**, Thursday
  - **cumâ**, Friday
  - **cumartesi**, Saturday

- **gün**, day
- **güzel**, beautiful, fine
- **hafta**, week
- **hava**, weather, air, climate
- **ötsüz**, lonely, deserted
- **kari**, wife, woman
- ** Kıbrıs**, Cyprus
- **koca**, husband
- **lazım**, necessary
- **mektup**, letter
- **mesele**, problem, question
- **ömrü (-mrü)**, life
- **posta**, post, mail
- **piyès**, play (theatrical)
- **saç**, hair
- **soğuk**, cold
- **şey**, thing
- **tavyare, uçak**, aeroplane
- **yağmur**, rain
- **yarin**, to-morrow
- **yoksa**, or, otherwise
- **vol. road, way, journey**

**Exercise 4**

(B) Translate into Turkish: (1) My wife has gone to Cyprus in order to see her father. (2) Is that yellow-haired girl your sister? (3) My father and my brother did not like the new play. (4) How many tickets do you want to buy?—Five. (5) There are three hundred and sixty-five days in a year. (6) The new Minister is coming this morning by air (‘by aeroplane’) from Istanbul. (7) This water is like ice; this water is as cold as ice. (8) Why are you strolling hatless and coatless in this weather? (9) Unfortunately my husband does not understand me. (10) Do you know that man? Why is he looking at us?
LESSON FIVE

96. Adverbs

(1) Turkish is not so fussy as English about the distinction between adjectives (which qualify nouns) and adverbs (which modify verbs). If your behaviour is good, you behave well; in Turkish, if your behaviour is iyi, you behave iyi.

(2) Words used adverbially may be repeated:

derin derin düşündüm, I thought deeply (deep deep)
yavaş yavaş gidiyorlar, they are going slowly (slow slow)

Note that in such doublets the accent is on the last syllable of the first element.

(3) There is also a suffix -ce/-çe/-ce/-ca (§ 44) which is used for making adverbs. This suffix is not accented:

güzel, beautiful; güzelce, beautifully, properly
lisan, dil, language; lanca, dilce, linguistically
hükûmet, government; hükûmetçe, governmentally, on the part of the government
ben, 1: hence, for my part, to my mind
doğru, straight; doğruca, directly

Words which show the pronominal n before case-endings show it also before this suffix: bu, ‘this’; bunca, ‘in this way, this much’.

Türkçe konuşmak, which we translate ‘to speak Turkish’, really means ‘to speak in-the-Turkish-way’. Words so formed, by adding -ce to nouns of nationality, though strictly adverbs, are used as adjectives—İngilizce sözlük, ‘English dictionary’—or nouns—Fransızca-in zayıf, ‘my French is weak’.

97. Adverbs of Place

These are formed by adding to the demonstratives (§ 92) or to ne ‘what?’ the syllable re/ra, followed by the appropriate case-ending. The accent is on the first syllable of the word so formed:

bu-ra-da, in this place, here; ne-re-de (nerde), in what place, where?
bu-ra-dan, from this place, hence; ne-re-den (nerden), from what place, whence?

bu-ra-ya, to this place, hither; ne-re-ye, to what place, whither?

So too: orada, oradan, oraya; surada, suradan, suraya, there, thence, thither.

But as 'hither, hence, whence', etc., are not in use in spoken English, care must be taken to add the right suffix when translating into Turkish:

Where are you? Nerede-siniz?
Where are you going? Nereye gidiyorsunuz?
Where have you come from? Nereden geldiniz?
He is standing there, Surada duruyor.
He is going there, Suraya gidiyor.
He has left (gone from) there, Suradan gitti.

Bu-ra, etc., are not used nowadays in the absolute form. If we want to say, e.g., 'This place is beautiful', it is usual to add the 3rd-person suffix: Burasi güzel ('this-its-place'). Burasi neresi? 'What place is this?'. Radio Ankara identifies itself thus: Burasi Ankara Türkiye, 'This (place) is Ankara, Turkey'.

Note (i): The heading of this paragraph refers to the English grammatical category. orada, buraya, etc., are no more adverbs than are odada, 'in the room', or sinemaya, 'to the pictures'.

Note (ii): -li (§ 86) may be used with -re/-ra : Nereli-siniz? ('you are characterized-by-what-place?'), 'where are you from?' Ben İstanbul'u-jum. Siz de oralı musunuz? 'I'm an Istanbul man. Are you a-native-of-that-place too?'

Note (iii): The words described above may take the plural suffix: burada, 'here'; buralarda, 'in these parts'; oralarda, 'thereabouts'. Note also uzak-ta and uzaklarda, 'far off'; yakın-da and yakınlarda, 'near by, soon, recently'.

98. The Suffix -ki

-ki (see § 37 (2)) may be added:

(1) To the genitive case of a noun or pronoun, to make a pronoun meaning 'the one which is . . .' whatever precedes:

benim, of me; benimki, the one which is of me, mine
Ahmed-in-ki, the one which belongs to Ahmet
onlar-in-ki, theirs
(2) To the locative case of a noun or pronoun, or to an adverb of place or time. The resulting word may be used as pronoun or adjective:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{bugün, today;} & \quad \text{bugünki gazete, today's newspaper} \\
\text{burada, here;} & \quad \text{buradaki kitap, the book which is here;} \\
\text{buradakiler, those who are here} & \\
\text{oda-nda, in my room;} & \quad \text{odamdaki telefon, the telephone which is in my room;} \\
\text{sizin odanızda, the one in your room} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

Any case-endings added to pronouns formed with -ki are preceded by the pronominal \( n \):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{benimkinden, from mine} & \\
\text{onunkindin, of his} & \\
\text{sizinkine, to yours} & \\
\text{bizimkinde, in ours} & \\
\text{onlarinkini aldı, he took theirs} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

99. Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

(1) daha, more; en, most.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{uzun, long} & \quad \text{iyi, good, well} & \quad \text{çok, much} \\
\text{daha uzun, longer} & \quad \text{daha iyi, better} & \quad \text{daha çok, more} \\
\text{en uzun, longest} & \quad \text{en iyi, best} & \quad \text{en çok, most} \\
\text{az, little;} & \quad \text{az faydalı (little useful), of little use} \\
\text{daha az, less;} & \quad \text{daha az faydalı, less useful} \\
\text{en az, least;} & \quad \text{en az faydalı, least useful} \\
\end{align*}
\]

‘than’ is expressed by the ablative suffix; for ‘this is better than that’ Turkish says ‘this is better from that’—Example (a). In sentences containing a ‘than’, daha may be omitted—Example (b). It cannot be omitted if there is no ‘than’—Example (c).

Examples:

(a) \( \text{Bu, şundan daha iyi-dir} \) This is better than that.
(b) \( \text{Bu, şundan iyidir} \) 
(c) \( \text{Şunu beğenmiyorum; bu daha iyidir, I don't like that; this is better.} \)

\(\text{EVİMIZ sizin-ki-n-den (daha) az rutubetlidir, Our house is less damp than yours.}\)

\(\text{DÜNYA-nın en yüksek tepe-si Himalayalardadır, The world's highest peak is in the Himalayas.}\)
(2) Apart from the use of *en*, Turkish has two methods of making superlatives: *(a)* by repetition (cf. §96 (2)):

*derin düşünceler*, deep thoughts; *derin derin düşünceler*, profound thoughts
*garı̇p hareketler*, strange actions; *garı̇p garı̇p hareketler*, extraordinary actions

*(b)* by prefixing a syllable resembling the first syllable of the word but ending in *m, p, s* or *r*. This prefix is accented:

*başka*, other; *bambaşka*, totally different
*temiz*, clean; *tartemiz*, spotless
*sıyah*, black; *simsiyah*, jet black
*bütün*, whole; *büş büütün*, entirely
*doğru*, straight; *dosdoğru*, dead straight
*yeni*, new; *yepyeni*, brand new
*kırmızı*, red; *kapkırmızı*, bright red

100. Uses of the Ablative Case

(1) The ablative indicates the point of origin or departure. Hence its use in comparisons: *bu şundan büyüktür*, ‘this is bigger than that’, might be rendered ‘this, taking that as starting-point, is big’. Hence also its use with verbs denoting avoidance, separation, withdrawal (‘from’). It indicates the cause from which something proceeds: *bu sebepten*, ‘for this reason’; *ondan korkuyorum*, ‘I am afraid of him’ (my fearing arises from him).

*Gitti medim; para-m yok-tu da on-dan*, ‘I didn’t go; I had no money, that’s why’ (‘and from that’). It translates ‘of’ as in ‘one of the children’: *çosuklar-den bir-i* (‘from the children, one-of-them’); and in ‘I have no news of him’: *on-dan haber-im yok*. ‘I am sure of this’: *bündan emin-im*. It indicates the material out of which something is made: *yeni masa-ya ceriz-den yapiyor*, ‘he is making the new table of walnut’.

(2) English ‘through, by way of’ is rendered by the ablative: *buradan geçmediler*, ‘they did not pass through here’; *pencere-den baktıyor*, ‘she is looking through the window’; *köprüye bu yol-dan gitti*, ‘he went to the bridge by this road’; *elim-den tuttu*, ‘he held me by my hand’ (elim-i tuttu would be ‘he held my hand’).

(3) Some adverbs are formed with the ablative suffix, e.g., *sonradan*, ‘afterwards’; *önceden*, ‘beforehand’; *eskiden*, ‘in the old days’ (not ‘from . . . ’); *çöktan*, ‘long since’; *sahiden*, ‘really, truly’. N.B. *doğru-dan doğru-ya*, ‘directly’.
Note: Words construed with the ablative will be shown preceded by -den, of course as an abbreviation for ‘-den or -dan according to vowel harmony’. As a reminder that the ablative is required with certain words, the beginner may find it helpful to memorize, for example, -den korkmak, ‘to fear’, as ‘to be afraid from’.

Similarly, words construed with the dative will be shown preceded by -e.

101. Postpositions with Ablative Case

-den evvel, -den önce, before
-den sonra, after
-den dolayı, -den ötürü, on account of, because of
-den beri (see Notes), since, for the last . . .
-den başka, other than, apart from, besides

Distinguish between -den evvel, önce, sonra and the same words used with the absolute case:

uç gün evvel (önce), three days before, ago
bundan evvel (önce), before this
iki saat sonra, two hours after, later
salı-dan sonra, after Tuesday
o günden dört gün sonra, four days after that day

Note (i): The present tense is used of activity that began in the past and is still going on, just as in French (which is why one may hear Continental visitors saying, ‘I am in London since three weeks’). Ocak-tan beri Ankara’da oturuyorum, ‘I have been living in A. since January. İki aydan beri Banka-da çalışiyor, ‘For the last two months (since two months) he has been working at the Bank.’

Note (ii): beri is sometimes written as a suffix: iki aydanberi.

102. The Verb: Future and Future-past Tenses

The tense-suffix is -ceke/-ceak, to which are added the ‘I am/was’ endings (cf. § 88). Remember that k before a vowel becomes ğ. Here are the future and future-past tenses of gitmek (gide‑), ‘to go’:

gideceğim, I shall go gidecektim, I was about to go or I should go (if . . .)
gideceksin, thou wilt go gidecektin, thou wilt about to go, etc.
gidecek(tir), he will go gidecekti, he was about to go
**Lesson Five**

*gideceğiz,* we shall go  
*gideceksiniz,* you will go  
*gidecekler,* they will go  
*gidecektik,* we were about to go  
*gidecektiniz,* you were about to go  
*gidecektiler,* they were about to go  
*gidecektleri,* they were about to go

The Negative and Interrogative are formed as shown in §§ 89, 90:  
*gitmiyeyeğin,* I shall not go  
gitmiyecek misiniz? will you not go?  
gidecek miydik? were we about to go?  
gitmiyecek miydiniz? weren’t you about to go?  
gitmiyecekler mi? will they not go?

Note: We do not usually say ‘You will come and you will see . . .’,  
but ‘You will come and see . . .’ So in Turkish there is no need  
to say *geleceksiniz ve göreceksiniz*; it is enough to say *gelecek, görecek-  
siniz* (‘about-to-come, about-to-see you are’). This may be done  
with any tense except the past tense in -di (§ 81): cf. § 123.

103. Compound Verbs

There are a large number of expressions in common use made  
up of a noun (often non-Turkish in origin) and the verb *etmek*  
(ed-), ‘to do’:  

kabul etmek (to do acceptance), to accept  
teşkil etmek (to do forming), to constitute  
tелефон etmek (to do telephone), to telephone

In the older language, other words for ‘to do’ were used in  
such compounds, notably *eylemek* and *kılmak*. The former is still  
in written use, especially to avoid the constant repetition of *etmek*  
(e.g., Exercise 14, sentence 18). The only compound in which  
*kılmak* is used nowadays is *namaz kılma*; ‘to perform the rites of  
(Muslim) prayer’.

The main accent in such compounds is on the last syllable of  
the noun, except when the interrogative *mi* follows, when the  
last syllable before the *mi* has the main accent: *telefon ediyor,* ‘he  
is ’phoning’, but *telefon ediyor mu?* ‘is he ’phoning?’

If the noun of such a compound is liable to a sound change  
before a vowel (§§ 43, 45, 47), it is usually written as one word  
with the *etmek* or *eylemek*:

*ayurt,* distinction; *ayurdetmek,* to distinguish  
*af,* (asfı), pardon; *affetmek,* to pardon  
sabır (asırı), patience, endurance; *sabretmek,* to be patient  
(ayurdeylemek, affeyelemek, sabreylemek)
104. ‘It’s raining’

Turkish always supplies a subject for yağmak, ‘to rain’ and gürlemek, ‘to thunder’:

yağmur yağyor (rain is raining), it’s raining
dolu yağyor (hail is raining), it’s hailing
kar yağyor (snow is raining), it’s snowing
gök gürülüyor (sky is thundering), it’s thundering

Vocabulary 5

acaba, I wonder köpek, dog
bahis (-hı), discussion, topic; köşe, corner
den bahvetmek, to speak of, lokania, restaurant
mention meclis, assembly
çiçek, flower millet (-ti), nation, religious
durum, vaziyet, position, situation 
community
geniş, wide, spacious muvaffak, successful
gül, rose (flower) nihayet, at last
hal (§ 64), condition, state resim (-smi), picture
hem . . . hem (de) . . . , both tâtıl, holiday
 . . . and . . . teklif, proposal, motion
her, every; herhalde, in any case, tiyatro, theatre
certainly toplanti, meeting
iktisadi, economic yardım, help; -e yardım etmek,
kadın, woman, lady to help
kara,* siyah, black yaz, summer
kim? who? yorulmak, to be tired, to weary
koku, smell, scent oneself

Exercise 5

(A) Translate into English: (1) Çalışacak, yorulacak ve nihayet muvaffak olacaksınız. (2) Oradaki kara otomobil kim-in?—Bilmiyorum, herhalde benimki değil. (3) Arkadaşınız nereli-dir?—Ö, benim gibi, Londra-li-dir. (4) Yakında mı Türkiye’ye gideceksiniz?—Pek yakında değil, yaz tatili-ninden sonra gideceğim. (5) Babanız bugünkü trenle mi gidiyor, yoksa yarın-a mı kalkıyor? (6) İstanbul hem en büyük, hem de en güzel şehir-imiz-dir. (7) Şu resim, benim oda-m-da-ki gibidir, değil mi?—Evet, fakat

* Besides kara, ‘black’, there is a noun kara meaning ‘land’: kara kuvoletleri, ‘land-forces’; kara suları, ‘territorial waters’; kara-ya çıkmak, ‘to disembark’ (‘go-out to-the-land’).

(B) Translate into Turkish: (1) We weren’t going to go to the theatre, on account of to-morrow’s meeting. (2) What is that man in the corner doing, I wonder?—He’s praying, isn’t he? (3) Did the Grand National Assembly not accept the Minister’s motion? (4) Our economic situation is now totally different. (5) After the theatre, we went to the Station Restaurant. (6) Orhan is both the biggest and the most intelligent of the children.—Is he more intelligent than his own sister, I wonder? (7) Were you speaking of to-day’s meeting? (8) His room is not as clean as mine; mine’s spotless. (9) I held the child by the hand, and we passed together across Galata Bridge. (10) What’s the name of your brother’s dog?—He has no dog; the name of mine is Karabash. (11) In my opinion, the flower with the most beautiful scent is the rose. (12) At last we’ve found a house with a spacious garden.
LESSON SIX

105. THE VERB—AORIST TENSES

The aorist (‘unbounded’) tenses, present and past, express habitual or continuous activity: ‘he goes to school’, ‘she used to live in France’. The tense-suffix is -r, added directly to vowel stems:

\[ \text{anl-} \text{a-} \text{m-ak, to understand; anlar, he understands} \]
\[ \text{taş-} \text{t-} \text{m-ak, to carry; taşr, he carries} \]

A vowel is inserted between the r and consonant-stems, according to the following rules:

(1) Consonant-stems of one syllable form their aorist by adding -er,-ar:

\[ \text{et-} \text{m-ek, to do; ed-er, he does} \]
\[ \text{git-} \text{m-ek, to go; gid-er, he goes} \]
\[ \text{çık-} \text{m-ak, to go up, out; çık-ar, he goes up, out} \]
\[ \text{sor-} \text{m-ak, to ask; sor-} \text{ar, he asks} \]

Exceptions (all these are common and must be known):

Aorist in -ur: alm-ak, to take; kal-ak, to remain; san-ak, to think; varm-ak, to reach: alt-ır, kal-ır, sanır, var-ır.

Aorist in -ur: ın-ak, to be, become; bul-ak, to find; dur-ak, to stand; varm-ak, to strike: ol-ur, bul-ur, dur-ur, var-ur.

Aorist in -ir: gelmek, to come; vermek, to give; bilm-ek, to know: gel-ir, ver-ir, bil-ir.

Aorist in -ur: görmek, to see; öl-ak, to die: gör-ür, ol-ur.

(2) Consonant-stems of more than one syllable add -ir:

\[ \text{kullan-} \text{m-ak, to use; kullan-} \text{ur, he uses} \]
\[ \text{çalış-} \text{m-ak, to work, try; çalış-} \text{ur, he works, tries} \]
\[ \text{göster-} \text{m-ek, to show; göster-} \text{ir, he shows} \]
\[ \text{getir-} \text{m-ek, to bring; getir-} \text{ir, he brings} \]
\[ \text{dokun-} \text{m-ak, to touch; dokun-} \text{ur, he touches} \]
\[ \text{öksür-} \text{m-ek, to cough; öksür-} \text{ur, he coughs} \]
(3) To these aorist bases are added the 'I am/was' endings, with the exception of dir (cf. § 88):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{gösteririm}, & \text{ I show} & \text{gösterirdim}, & \text{I used to show, should show (if...)}
\text{gösterirsin}, & \text{ thou showest} & \text{gösterirdin}, & \text{thou didst show}
\text{gösterir}, & \text{ he shows} & \text{gösterirdi}, & \text{he used to show}
\text{gösteririz}, & \text{ we show} & \text{gösterirdik}, & \text{we used to show}
\text{gösterirsiniz}, & \text{ you show} & \text{gösterirdiniz}, & \text{you used to show}
\text{gösterirler}, & \text{ they show} & \text{gösterirlerdi}, & \text{they used to show}
\end{align*}
\]

So also: görürüm, görürsun, etc., 'I see'; bulurum, bulursun, etc., 'I find'; kullanırdım, 'I used to use'; öksürürdünüz, 'you used to cough'.

106. The Aorist Negative

Unlike other tenses, the negative of the aorist is formed by adding to the negative stem (§ 83) not the tense-suffix r but a z, which is omitted in the 1st person singular and plural. A further irregularity is in the accentuation. The following models should therefore be learned by heart:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{gelmemek}, & \text{ not to come} & \text{almamak}, & \text{not to take}
\text{gelmem}, & \text{ I do not come} & \text{almam}, & \text{I do not take}
\text{gelmezsin}, & \text{ thou dost not come} & \text{almazsin}, & \text{thou dost not take}
\text{gelmez}, & \text{ he does not come} & \text{almaz}, & \text{he does not take}
\text{gelmeziz}, & \text{ we do not come} & \text{almayiz}, & \text{we do not take}
\text{gelmezsiniz}, & \text{ you do not come} & \text{almazsiniz}, & \text{you do not take}
\text{gelmezler}, & \text{ they do not come} & \text{almazlar}, & \text{they do not take}
\end{align*}
\]

The aorist past is formed by adding -dim, -din, etc., to the negative aorist base: gelmezdim, gelmezdin, gelmezdi, gelmezdzik, gelmezdiniz, gelmezlerdi or gelmezdlar, 'I used not to come', etc. The interrogative is regular—miyim, miydim, etc., following the base, positive or negative:

\[
\begin{align*}
gelir \text{ misiniz?} & \text{ do you come?}
gelmez \text{ miyiniz?} & \text{ used you not to come?}
almaz \text{ miydim?} & \text{ used we not to take?}
\end{align*}
\]
107. Uses of the Aorist

(1) Statements of general validity:

kahve severim, I like coffee
iki iki daha dört eder, two plus two make four (two, two more,
make four)

(2) Expressions of willingness or readiness (compare ‘We go
anywhere, do anything’):

Bana bir kibrit ver-ir misiniz? Will you give me a match?
Evet, ver-ir-im, Yes I will.

It is therefore used to express promises: Gelirim dedim mi,
gelirim ben, ‘I’ll come’ did I say? (Then) I’ll come’.

(3) Sometimes the present and aorist tenses seem to be used
indifferently; biliyorum or bilirim, ‘I know’. Practice is the best
guide, but here is a working rule:

oku-yor-um, I am reading
oku-r-um, I read or I shall read
oku-yacağ-um, I am going to read
oku-yor-dum, I was reading
oku-r-dum, I used to read
oku-yacak-tum, I was going
to read

Note (i): affedersiniz (‘you pardon’), ‘I beg your pardon’;
teşekkür ederim (‘I do thank’), ‘thank you’; olur (‘it comes to
be’), ‘it is possible, all right, O.K.; olmaz (‘it does not come to
be’), ‘it is impossible, it won’t do’.

Note (ii): istemez, ‘he does not want’, is colloquially used for
‘I don’t want it’, e.g., when shaking off importunate street-
traders. It is conventionally explained as being short for can
isteğiniz, ‘(My) soul does not want’.

108. ‘While’

‘While’ is translated by the invariable and unaccented suffix
-ken or the separate word iken, strictly ‘while being’, the i- being
the stem of the old verb ‘to be’ (§ 82), both commonly used after
the aorist base, as in the first two examples:

Üsküdar’a gider iken (giderken) bir mendil buldum, While going
to Scutari, I found a handkerchief.
O hiç şarap içmezken din aksam bir şişe içti, While he never
drinks wine, yesterday evening he drank a bottle.
Askıkeren Kıbrıs’a gittim, While I was in the Army (soldier-
while) I went to Cyprus.
Vaktiniz var iken, nişin bu makale-yi okumazsznz? While you have the time (your-time existent while-being), why don’t you read this article?

Note that the subject of the ‘while’ clause is not shown by the aorist, which remains in the base-form, but has to be indicated externally; in the first example it is ‘I’, the subject of the main verb buldum, in the second it is ‘he’: O.

109. ‘As soon as’

The positive and negative aorist bases used together mean ‘as soon as’:

*Ben gelir gelmez, Ahmet çktı, As soon as I came, Ahmet went out (I coming not-coming, i.e., when I was on the dividing line between arrival and non-arrival). Mehtub-unuz-u alır almaz baban-ın-a gösterdim, As soon as I received your letter I showed (it) to my father.*

*Note*: But ister istemez means ‘willy-nilly’, while olur olmaz means ‘any old . . . , just any . . . ’: Bu is ister istemez olacak, ‘This thing is going to be, like it or not’. Bu, olur olmaz adam-ın kár-tı thorough, ‘This isn’t just any man’s job’.

110. Numerals: Ordinal

(1) In § 91 we saw the Turkish equivalents of ‘one, two, three’, etc., the cardinal numerals. Ordinal numerals—‘first, second, third’—are formed by adding -ncı to cardinal numerals ending in a vowel, -ncı to those ending in a consonant:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Birinci</th>
<th>First</th>
<th>Sekizinci</th>
<th>Eighth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>İkinci</td>
<td>Second</td>
<td>Dokuzuncu</td>
<td>Ninth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Üçüncü</td>
<td>Third</td>
<td>Omuncu</td>
<td>Tenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dördüncü</td>
<td>Fourth</td>
<td>Yirminci</td>
<td>Twentieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beşinci</td>
<td>Fifth</td>
<td>Birinci</td>
<td>Thousandth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altinci</td>
<td>Sixth</td>
<td>Otuz beşinci</td>
<td>Thirty-fifth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yedinci</td>
<td>Seventh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) Besides birinci, ilk also is used for ‘first’, ‘primary’. ‘Last’ is son, which as a noun means ‘end’.

(3) From kaç, ‘how many?’ is formed kaçncı, ‘how-manyeth?’:

*Oğlunuz sınıf-ın mı kaçncı-sıdır? (Your-son of-his-class is-its-how-manyeth), What’s your son’s position in class?*
(4) Just as we abbreviate 'first, second, third', etc., to 1st, 2nd, 3rd and so on, the Turkish equivalents are abbreviated to \( rünci, \) \( 2ünci, \) \( 3ünci \), sometimes to \( 1ci, 2ci, 3ci \), etc. With names of sovereigns, the Roman numerals are used: \( \text{Mehmet II, pronounced ikinci Mehmet} \). Some writers have the logical, but at first sight confusing, habit of putting the numeral first: \( \text{II Mehmet, VI Corç (§ 42), II Elizabet} \).

111. Fractions

There are three words for 'half':

(1) \( \text{buçuk} \) is used only with whole numbers, and must always be translated 'and a half': \( \text{iki bucuk, '2} \frac{1}{2} '; \text{kirk dokuz bucuk, '49} \frac{1}{2} \).\( \)

(2) \( \text{yari} \) is used—

(a) as a noun—\( \text{şu kitapların yarısı türkçe}, '\text{half of those books are Turkish}.' \); \( \text{gece yarısı ('night its-half')}, '\text{midnight}.' \)

(b) as an adjective, to be translated 'mid-'—\( \text{yari gece}, '\text{midnight}.' \)

c) as an adverb, modifying adjectives—\( \text{yari deli}, '\text{half-mad}.' \); \( \text{yari yuvarlak}, '\text{half-round}.' \)

(3) \( \text{yarm} \) is an adjective meaning 'half':

\( \text{bir yarım saat, a half-hour} \)

\( \text{bir yarım elma, a half-apple} \)

\( \text{yarmada, peninsula (half-island)} \)

'Quarter' is \( \text{çeyrek}, \) little used except with \( \text{saat: bir çeyrek saat, 'a quarter-hour, a quarter of an hour.'} \)

Other fractions are put in the form 'one in five', 'three in seven': \( \text{beş-te bir, '} \frac{1}{5} '; \text{yedi-de üç, '} \frac{2}{7} '); \text{yüzde on, '} \frac{10}{100} '.

\( \text{para-ın dörtte bir-i (of the money, in four its-one), a quarter of the money} \)

\( \text{koylu-ler-in yüz-de doksan-i, ninety per cent of the villagers} \)

As the \( \text{yüzde, 'in hundred, per cent'}, \) comes first, so too does the percentage sign: \% 90.

112. 'Two each'.

Distributive numerals are formed by adding -\( er/-ar \) to numbers ending in a consonant, -\( şer/-şar \) to those ending in a vowel: \( \text{birer, ikişer, üçer, dördür, beşer, altışar, 'one each, two each, three each', etc.} \) 'Half each' is irregular: \( \text{yarımşar. Çocuklara bir elma} \)
verdim, 'I gave the children an apple', but şocuklara birer elma verdim, 'I gave the children an apple each'.

Bize kırk beşer lira verdi, He gave us £45 each.
Askıler üçer üçer yürüyörler (cf. §96 (2)), The soldiers are marching in threes, three by three.

113. THE SUFFIX -ci
-ci/-çi denotes regular occupation or profession, like our ' -ist'.

telgraf, telegraph; telgrafçi, telegraphist
kapı, door, gate; kapıcı, porter, doorman
süt, milk; sütçü, milkman
tütün, tobacco; tütüncü, tobacconist
spor, sports, games; sporcu, sportsman, athlete
yalan, falsehood; yalançı, liar, imitation
inat, obstinacy; inatçı, pig-headed
 yol, road, way; yolcu, traveller
eski, old; eskiçi, rag-and-bone man
milliyet, nationality; milliyetçi, nationalist
ne? what?; neç? of what profession?

114. THE SUFFIX -lik
(1) Its most important use is to make abstract nouns:
güzel, beautiful; güzellik, beauty
şocuk, child; şocukluk, childhood, childishness
akılsız, unintelligent; akılsızlık, stupidity
stück, hot; stückerlik, heat
asker, soldier; askerlik, military service
ben, I; benlik, identity, personality
bir, one; birlik, unity, unit, union
milliyetçi, nationalist; milliyetçilik, nationalism
yolcu, traveller; yolculuk, travel, travelling

(2) Another common use is to make adjectives and nouns from numerical expressions:
kişi, person; yemek, food; üç kişilik yemek, food for three people
posta pul-u, postage-stamp; beş kuruşluq posta pul-ları, five-piastre stamps
gün, day; iki günlik yol, two-day journey
ihtiyar, old (man); seksenlik bir ihtiyar, an old man of eighty
(3) It makes adjectives and nouns showing the purpose for which something is intended or suitable:

kömür, coal; kömürük, coal-hole, bunker
odun, wood; odunluk, wood-shed, -pile
saman, straw; samanlık, straw-rick
kumas, material; perde, curtain; perdelik kumas, curtaining material
gelin, bride; gelinlik kızlar, marriageable girls
cennet, paradise; cennetlik, destined for paradise
ehennem, hell; ehennemlik, (a) destined for hell, (b) stokehold of a Turkish bath
korku, fear; korkuluk, scarecrow
göz, eye; gözlük, eyeglasses, spectacles
evlät, child; evlatlık, adopted child

Note (i): Simdilik, bugünlik (‘for now, for to-day’) are used adverbially: Simdilik Allah'a vuruldu (§ 177), ‘Good-bye for now’. Bugünlik bu kadar yeter, ‘That’s enough for to-day (this amount suffices for to-day).’

Note (ii): The word ‘odalık’ is from the Turkish odalık, ‘(girl) for the (bed-) room.’

115. Uses of the DATIVE CASE

The dative shows the recipient or destination, the point to which an action is directed. It is therefore common with verbs of motion and with adjectives conveying such ideas as proximity and conformity. Usually it may be translated ‘to’, but sometimes English idiom demands a different preposition, as shown by the italicized words in the English of the following examples. Examples 8 to 12 show some Turkish verbs which take a dative, although their English equivalents have a direct object.

1. Bu çiçekleri siz-e aldım, I bought these flowers for you.
2. Resimler-e baktıysan. She is looking at the pictures.
3. Hastalar-a bakar, She looks after the patients.
4. Kalemi cebin-e koyдум, I put the pen into my pocket.
5. Et-e tuz koyдум, I put salt on the meat.
7. Pusula-ya adresini yazdı, He wrote his address on the chit.
8. Kardeşinize siz-e benziyorum, Your brother resembles you.
9. Oda-ya girdik, We entered the room.
10. İşimiz-e başladık, We began our work.
11. Vapur-a bindim, I boarded the steamer.
12. Köy-e vardık, We reached the village.

For the dative expressing purpose, see §§ 125 (neye?) and 130 (a).
The infinitive may be governed by a verb taking the dative:

yürümeğ-e başladı, we began to walk.

116. POSTPOSITIONS WITH THE DATIVE CASE

The meaning of the dative may be made more specific by means of a postposition:

-e göre, according to, suitable for, applicable to, fitting
-e kadar (the amount to), as far as, until (see Notes)
-e doğru (straight to), towards
-e karşı (opposite to), against, facing
-e rağmen, in spite of

Note (i): -e kadar also translates ‘in’, as in ‘he will come in five minutes’, beş dakika-ya kadar gelecek, and ‘by’ as in ‘If you are not back by ten we’ll go without you’. For an example see Exercise 12, (A) (3).

Note (ii): Instead of -e kadar, some writers use the archaic and provincial -e dek: sabah-a dek konuştuk, ‘we talked until morning’.

117. VERBS, TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE

A verb is said to be used transitively when its action passes over (‘transits’) to a direct object—‘I ate a bun’—and intransitively when there is no object expressed—‘When did you last eat?’ Some verbs are never transitive: ‘he exists, we intervened’. In Turkish, when a normally transitive verb is used without a direct object there is a tendency to supply a cognate object in the shape of a noun from the same root as the verb. Here are some common examples: yazı yazmak (‘to write writing’), ‘to write’; yemek yemek, ‘to eat’ (the first yemek is a noun meaning ‘eating, meal, food’, the second is the infinitive ‘to eat’): dikiş dikişmek, ‘to sew’; örgü örme, ‘to knit’. In the (a) sentences following, the verb has an external direct object; in the (b) sentences there is no external object, so a cognate object is supplied.

1. (a) Babam, odasında mektuplarını yazıyor, My father is writing his letters in his room.
   (b) Babam, odasında yazı yazıyor, My father is writing in his room.
2. (a) Bugün et yemedim, I have not eaten meat to-day.
   (b) Bugün yemek yemedim, I have not eaten to-day.
3. (a) Karım gömlegi ni dikiyor, My wife is sewing my shirt.
   (b) Karım dikiş dikiyor, My wife is sewing.
4. (a) Annem bana bir kazak örüyor, My mother is knitting a
   pullover for me.
   (b) Annem örgü örüyor, My mother is knitting.

118. Months of the Year

ocak, January       temmuz, July
subat, February     ağustos, August
mart (-ti), March   eylül, September
nisan, April        ekim, October
mayıs, May          kasım, November
Haziran, June       Aralık, December

For four of the months, older names are still met with:

ikinci kânum, son kânun or kânûnusâni, January
birinci teşrin, ilk teşrin or teşrînievel, October
ikinci teşrin, son teşrin or teşrînisânu, November
birinci kânun, ilk kânun or kânûnuevel, December

‘In May’ is mayıs-ta or mayıs ay-t-nda. ‘On the first of the
month’ is ay-in bir-i nde (‘on the one of the month ’). ‘On the
eighth of March’ is sekiz mart-ta, written 8 martta. Roman
figures are often used to indicate the month, and the thousands
figure of the year is often omitted: 20. vi. 953, ‘20th June 1953’.

Vocabulary 6

apart(1)man, flat, block of flats       ekmek, bread
ayak, foot; ayakkabi, footwear,       fâiz, interest (bank)
   pair of shoes (§ 75 (4))
banka, bank                            fotoğraf, photograph
basmak, to press, print; -e            gâlibâ, presumably, I believe
casnak, to tread on                     gene, yine, again, moreover
-e binmek, to mount, board             harp (-rbi), war
biraz, a little                        hasta, ill
çihan, world                           hayhay, certainly!
hesâp, account (bank)                  insan, human being, man
değışmek, to change (intransitive)     kalem, pen
dolap, cupboard                        kâgit, paper
dolasmak, to walk about, roam,         kazannmak, to win, gain
go round
kişi, person (usually with a number)

-den korkmak, to be afraid of

kuruş, piastre

kuş, bird

küçük, small

lütfen (first word in sentence), please!

manav, fruiterer

meydan, open space, square

muharebe, battle, war; meydän

muharebesi, pitched battle

mürekkep, ink

nesil (-sli), generation

ordu, army

ögle, noon

paha, price; pahalı, expensive

portakal, orange

rádio, radio, wireless

raf, shelf

rahat, comfortable

şüphe, doubt

takım, team, set, gang

tam, exactly, just

tasarruf, savings

tramvay, tram

uğramak, to drop in, call

vagon, railway-carriage

zaman, time; ne zaman, when?

Exercise 6


(B) Translate into Turkish: (1) Will you please bring me the telephone-directory?—Certainly!—Thank you. (2) In order to write, pen, paper and ink are necessary. (3) I walked about till evening; I did not find a pair of shoes to fit my foot. (4) Aren’t you afraid of becoming ill? (5) As soon as we saw the tram, Orhan began to run. (6) Your clock is standing on the second shelf of that cupboard. (7) While I was boarding the tram this morning in Taksim Square I saw three photographers. (8) This flat is just suitable for you. (9) My wife sews while listening to the wireless. (10) Man, by means of the aeroplane, flies in the air like the birds (§ 53). (11) Every great city changes from generation to generation. (12) She’s gone; I don’t know where.
LESSON SEVEN

119. Participles and Verbal Nouns

A participle is an adjective formed from a verb (it partakes of the nature of both adjective and verb). English has a present and a past participle; present, as in ‘the glory is departing’ and past, as in ‘the glory is departed’. It is unfortunate for our purposes that in English present participles and verbal nouns have the same suffix ‘-ing’; in Turkish they have different suffixes, so the distinction must be clearly understood.

(a) His brother is swimming.
(b) His recreation is swimming.

In (a), ‘swimming’ is a participle, a verbal adjective for which we may substitute other adjectives: ‘his brother is fat, energetic, clever, married’. In (b), ‘swimming’ is a verbal noun, for which we may substitute other nouns: ‘his recreation is tennis, music, woodwork’.

The -mek/-mak infinitive is one form of verbal noun; we may translate düşmek kolaydır as ‘to fall is easy’ or ‘falling is easy’.

120. ‘The man who is walking in the street.’
‘The letter which will come to-morrow.’
‘The woman who has bought this shop.’

Such expressions are rendered in Turkish by means of participles, thus: ‘In-the-street walking man’ (§ 65 (4)), ‘To-morrow being-about-to-come letter’, ‘This shop having-bought woman’.

121. Present Participle

-(y)en/-(y)an suffixed to verb-stem: olmak, ‘to be’; olan, ‘being, who or which is’; olmamak, ‘not to be’, olmyan, ‘not being, who or which is not’; yürümek, ‘to walk’, yürüyen, ‘walking’, etc., yürümüyên, ‘not walking’, etc.

The present participle represents action contemporaneous with the main verb, so it is sometimes to be translated as past:

Konuşan adam susacak, The man who-is-speaking will-be-silent.
Konuşan adam sustu, The man who-was-speaking was-silent.

74
Like most adjectives, the present participle may be used as a noun: instead of *bunu bilen adamlar,* ‘men who-know this’, we may say *bunu bilenler,* ‘those who know this’.

122. **Past Participle**

-miş suffixed to verb-stem: *olmuş,* ‘having been, who or which has been’; *olmamış,* ‘who has not been’; *yürümüş,* ‘who or which has walked’; *yürümemiş,* ‘who or which has not walked’.

The English future perfect tense—‘I shall have gone’—is translated by the past participle plus the future of *olmak:* *gittiş olacağım* (‘having-gone I-shall-be’).

123. **Future Participle and Aorist Participle**

These are identical with the future and aorist bases (§§ 102, 105, 106), which explains the use of the ‘I am/was’ endings to form the future and aorist tenses: *gelecek* is a participle meaning ‘about to come’, so *geleceksiniz* means ‘you are about to come’; similarly, *gelir* is a participle meaning ‘habitually coming’, while *gelmek* is a participle meaning ‘not coming’, so *gelsiniz, gelsiniz* mean ‘you come’, ‘you do not come’. It will be seen that although, e.g., *geleceksiniz* is conventionally called the future tense, the two elements composing it never lose their separate identities. ‘I shall not come’ is *gelmeyecem,* but we may also say, with a rather different emphasis, *gelişek değilim,* ‘I’m not going to come, I don’t intend to come’. So with the negative aorist participle: *bilmeyecem* (‘not-knowing I-am-not’), ‘I am not ignorant’.

124. **The Use of the Participles**

It must be remembered that, while verbs usually come at the end of the sentence, attributive adjectives always precede their noun—*kız güzel(dir),* ‘the girl is pretty’, but *güz* *kız,* ‘the pretty girl’. So *bu saat çalar,* ‘this clock strikes’, but *bu çalar saat,* ‘this striking clock’. *O sokak şıkma* ‘that street does-not-come-out’, but *o şikmaz sokak* or simply *o şikmaz,* ‘that cul-de-sac’. *Zaman gelecek,* ‘the time will come’; *gelecek zaman,* ‘future time’.

To translate ‘who (which) has been/will be’, the past or future participle respectively is usually followed by *olan,* ‘who (which) is’.

- *gelen adam,* the man who is coming
- *gittiş olan adam,* the man who has come
- *gelecek olan adam,* the man who is going to come
Examples

memur mesgul(dur), the official is busy; mesgul olan memur, the official who is busy

ism-i Hikmet’tür, his name is Hikmet, ismi Hikmet olan kardeşim, my brother, whose name is H (his-name H. being)

Kore’den donmuş olanlar, those who have returned from Korea (returned beings)

bizi Türkiye’ye götürerek olan uçak, the aeroplane which is going to take us to Turkey

parast olmayan bir gînç, a youth who has no money (his-money not-being)

çalışmaya talebelerden, from the students who do-not-work, çalışmayağanlardan, from those who do not work

babası olmış olan çocuk, the child whose father has died (who-is his-father-dead)

NB gelecek hafta, ‘next week’, geçen hafta ‘last week’ (where one would expect the past participle as in this next example)
genmiş zaman, ‘past time’, geçmişle, ‘in the past’, gelekekte, ‘in the future’

125 Interrogatives

Several of these have been noted already but no harm will be done by recapitulating mutturn turns any preceding word into a question ne, ‘what’, figures in a good many interrogatives—nechin (for m uzin), ‘why’ , neerede where?, neerime, ‘to where?’, neereden, ‘from where?’, nereli ‘belonging to whom’ , nerî ‘of what profession’ It is also compounded with her amount, zaman, takit ‘time’, gibi ‘like, cins, ‘gender, turlu ‘sort’, biçim ‘shape’, asıl, origin ‘thus

ne kadır how much

ne zaman, ne takit, when?

ne gibi, ne cins, ne turlu, ne biçim what sort of?

nasıl, how? what kind of?

kim, who?

hangi, which?

kaç, how many? (followed by) noun in singular

Kim may take any case-ending and also the plural suffix

Kim işe gitti, Whom did you see?

Kimler işe gitti, What people did you see?
Lesson Seven

Bunu kimden aldınız? From-whom did you take this?
Şunu kime verdiniz? To-whom did you give that?
Bu şapka kimin? (This hat of-whom?) Whose is this hat?
Kiminle beraber geldi? Together with-whom did he come?

kim, hangi and kaç may take possessive suffixes: kim-iniz? ‘who-of-you?’ (‘your-who?’); hangi-niz? ‘which of us?’ Bu bavullar-in kaç-i sizin? ‘How many of these trunks are yours?’ Ay-in kaçında? ‘On which day of the month?’ (‘of-the-month on-its-how-many?’); hangileri, more commonly hangisi, ‘which of them?’ (cf. §72 (5): the question ‘which?’ presupposes more than one).

kaç and kaçan (‘to, from how much?’) are both used for ‘at what price?’ as is kaç paraya (‘for how much money?’); Kilosu kaça? (‘its-kilo for-how-much’), ‘How much is it per kilo?’

ne may take case- and plural-suffixes, though unlike kim it remains in the absolute form when object of a verb (just as in English: ‘who saw whom?’ but ‘what did what?’). Ne yaptınız? ‘What have you done?’ Ne-niz var? ‘What’s up with you?’ (‘What have you?’). Ne-m-e lâzım? (‘to-what-of-mine necessary?’) or Bana ne? ‘What’s it got to do with me?’ Ne-ler gördük! ‘What things we’ve seen!’ Neden and neye (also niye) are both used for ‘why?’ Sometimes ne itself may be translated ‘why?’

Ne karşıyorsunuz? What are you interfering (for)?
Ne güzel! or Ne kadar güzel! How beautiful!
Ne güzel çiçekler! What beautiful flowers!

126. Postpositional Expressions

(1) We can express the sense of many English prepositions by a roundabout phrase:

(a) behind
   during
   by
   
   (b) at the back of
   in the course of
   through the agency of

For almost all prepositions not already given, the Turkish equivalents follow the pattern of (b). ‘Front’, for example, is ön:

Ön-iüm-de durdu, he stopped in front of me (at-my-front).
Ön-imiş-den geçtiler, they passed before us (by-way-of-our-front).
Ev-in önünde iki ağaç var, in front of the house (of-the-house at-its-front) there are two trees.
Bu noka-ya göz önünde tutmak lázım, it is necessary to keep this point before the eye.

It will be noted that in the third example, where a definite house is meant, 'house' and 'front' stand in the Possessive Relationship, while in the last example, where 'eye' is metaphorical, the relationship is Qualifying. This rule is not always followed; definite nouns do not always take the genitive suffix before a postpositional expression.

(2) As postpositions are mostly used after nouns, and to express 'place where' more often than 'place whither' or 'place whence', each word in the following list is shown in the form in which it usually occurs, i.e., with the 3rd-person-possessive suffix and in the locative case, but it must be remembered that all are variable in person and case, as shown above.

ön, front; ... önunde, in front of, before
arka, art, back; ... arkaında, arkında, behind
iç, interior; ... içinde, inside
dış, exterior; ... dışında, outside
ust, üst-, top; ... üstünde, üstünde, above, over
alt (-ti), underside; ... altında, underneath
orta, middle; ... ortasında, in the middle of
ara, interval; ... arasında, between, among
yan, side; ... yanında, beside
karsı, opposite, side; ... karşıında, against, face to face with
etraf, surroundings; ... etrafında, around

(3) The following are mostly used with the case-endings shown:

... hakkında (in his right), concerning, about
... tarafından (from his side), by, through the agency of
... uğrunda, uğrunda (in/for his luck), for the sake of
... yüzünden (from his cause), because of
... soyesinde (in his shadow), thanks to
... yerine (to his place), instead of
... boyunca (in respect of its length, § 96 (3)), along, through-out

(4) Of the words in the list in (2), only üst- is never used without a possessive suffix. All the rest may be used like any other
nouns or (except *etraf*), as adjectives: *dış ticaret*, ‘external trade’.
*üstü* is used in qualifying relationships to mean ‘at the point of’:
*akşam üstü*, at the coming of evening
*yemek üstü*, just at dinner-time
*suç* (guilt) *üstü*, red-handed, in the act

(5) Two nouns followed by *arasında* ‘between’ are linked by *ile*:
*köylü ile bey arasındaki münasebetler*, relations between villager and squire.

(6) *baş* ‘head’ is used postpositionally to indicate proximity:
*vazıfe başında*, on duty
*iş başında*, at work, on the job
*silâh başına*, to arms!
*yamında*, by my side
*yambaşında*, right by my side

N.B. *masa başında* means ‘at/around the table’, not ‘at the head of the table’.

(7) Note *lehä* and *aleyh* (Arabic: ‘for him’, ‘against him’):
*lehtе/alehtе olmak*, to be pro/contra
*lehinde/alehinde söyledi*, he spoke for/against me

*Note*: It will be seen that these ‘postpositional expressions’ are simply nouns: we single them out under this heading as equivalent to a large and common class of English words (prepositions), but from the point of view of grammatical analysis *vapurun içinde*, ‘on the inside of the steamer’, is identical with *vapurun güvertesinde*, ‘on the deck of the steamer’; no grammarian would call *güvertesi*- a postposition. Cf. § 97, *Note* (*i*).

127. *aşrı*

As a suffix, *aşrı* means ‘beyond, at an interval of’:
*deniz aşrı*, overseas
*günün aşrı*, every other day
*iki kap aşrı* (beyond two doors), at the third door down
*ev aşrı*, next door but one

Its original meaning is ‘excessive(ly)’.

128. The Verb: Imperative

The imperative is the form of the verb used in giving orders—
‘Go!’, ‘Sit down!’ The 2nd person singular of the imperative
is the verb-stem, positive or negative, to which -(y)in or -(y)iniz is added to make the plural, the longer form being the politer of the two. There is also a 3rd person imperative in -sin. This must not be confused with -sin, ‘thou art’, which is unaccented and is attached to a tense-base, never to the naked stem; e.g., gel-ir-sin, ‘thou comest’, gel-eceksin, ‘thou wilt come’, but gelsin, ‘let him come’. The suffixes of the imperative constitute the Type III verb-endings (§ 66).

| 2nd sing. | gel | gelme |
| 2nd plural | gelin | geltiniz |
| 3rd sing. | gelsin, let him come | gelsin, let him not come |
| 3rd plural | gelsinler, let them come | gelsinler, let them not come |
| 2nd sing. | ol | olma |
| 2nd plural | olan | olsun |
| 3rd sing. | olsun, let him be | olsun, let him not be |
| 3rd plural | olsunlar, let them be | olsunlar, let them not be |

The following expressions, containing the imperative of olsun, are common:

hamdolsun, thank God! (let praise be!)
şag ol, be alive-and-well! colloquial forms of thanks
eksik olsun, be not wanting! (of illnesses, i.e., wish you/him better)
gh olsun, serve—you right! (let there be oh—a sound indicating pleasure)

Note: The rule given in § 88, Note, does not apply to the Imperative. Buşlayin! ‘Begin!’

Vocabulary 7

aşk, open
diş, tooth
dizi, file, row
dügyu, feeling
elbette, of course, certainly
ey . . . !, O . . . !
geç, late; geç kalmak, to be late
gect (-ti), mountain-pass, passage
Lesson Seven

genç, young
göstermek, to show
göz, eye
hasret (-i), regret, longing
hız, speed; hızlı, speedy,
   quickly
ilelebet, for ever
ısrırmak, to bite
İslav, Slav
istihkâm, fortification
istiklal (-i), independence
korumak, to protect
köy, village
manzara, view, aspect
masa, table
mevsim, season
muhafaza etmek, to preserve
müdâfaa etmek, to defend
ölüm, death
parmak, finger
sade, plain, simple, simply
(-e) sahip, owner, possessor (of)
sır (-rî), secret
sormak, to enquire-about; -e or
   -den sormak, to ask someone
şark, east
tabiî, natural(ly)
tepê, hill, peak
tugay, brigade
uzatmak, to reach, extend
vazîfe, duty
yapraç, leaf
yassi, flat, level

Exercise 7


(B) Translate into Turkish: (1) The dog showed his teeth as if (‘like’) about-to-bite. (2) Don’t walk so quickly. (3) Take these photographs and put them on top of my table. (4) They say of (§ 94, Note (iv)) the East, ‘It possesses the secret of death.’ (5) Open the leaves of the book with the penknife, not with the
finger.  (6) Which horse came first?  (7) Thank God our work
is going well.  (8) Let him not be late, let him come early.  (9)
Does the villager who has not gone out of his village understand
these problems?—He does not understand (them).  (10) They
live two doors away from us.
LESSON EIGHT

129. THE VERBAL NOUN

(1) Besides the infinitive in -mek/-mak, there are three other verbal nouns, ending in -me/-ma, -(y)iş and -meklik/-maklık. These three may take any of the possessive or case-endings, whereas -mek never takes possessive endings or the suffix of the genitive case. The declension of -(y)iş and -meklik calls for no special comment. Here are the cases of the other two verbal nouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>gelmek</th>
<th>gelme</th>
<th>bakmak</th>
<th>bakma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Def. Obj.</td>
<td>gelmeği</td>
<td>gelmeyi</td>
<td>bakmağı</td>
<td>bakmayı</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td></td>
<td>gelmeyinun</td>
<td></td>
<td>bakmanın</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>gelmeğe</td>
<td>{gelmeye</td>
<td>bakşağ açta</td>
<td>{bakstäya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>gelmiye</td>
<td></td>
<td>bakşada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locative</td>
<td>gelmekte</td>
<td>gelmede</td>
<td>bakmakta</td>
<td>bakşadan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>gelmekten</td>
<td>gelmeden</td>
<td>bakmanyan</td>
<td>bakşadan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the alternative forms of the dative of -me/-ma, see § 88, Note. In spoken Turkish -maya is used in preference to -mağı for the dative of the verbal noun of back-vowel verbs; in front-vowel verbs there is, of course, no difference of pronunciation between -meğe and -meye. As for the meanings: gelmek, gelme and gelmeklik all mean 'the act of coming', while geliş means 'the act or manner of coming'.

As gelmem, 'my coming', is identical with the first person singular of the negative aorist—'I do not come.'—gelmekläğim is preferred where ambiguity might arise. Apart from this, the -me form is much the most used.

Remember that the syllable before the negative -me/-ma is accented, and distinguish carefully the following forms:

gelme, bakma, don't come, don't look
gelme, bakma, the act of coming, of looking
gel-me-me, bak-ma-ma, the act of not-coming, of not-looking
gel-me-m-e, bak-ma-m-a, to my coming, to my looking
gel-me-me-m-e, bak-ma-ma-m-a, to my not-coming, not-looking
(2) In addition to the regular negatives in -memek, -meme and -mev, there are two other negative verbal nouns: (a) in -mezlik e.g., from anlaşmak, ‘to understand one another’, is formed anlaşmazlık, ‘misunderstanding’, from saldırmak, ‘to assault’, comes saldırmazlık, ‘non-aggression’ (b) in -memezlik from saymak, ‘to count, esteem’, comes saynamazlık, ‘disrespect’ See also § 176 (5)

130 THE USES OF THE VERBAL NOUN

Verbal nouns, like all other nouns, must have the case-endings appropriate to the context. The -mel infinitive generally remains in the absolute form when object of istemel, ‘to want’, and bilmek, ‘to know’, yuzmek istiyorum, ‘I want to swim’, yuzmek bíyorum, ‘I know (how) to swim’ (it sais nager). When a verbal noun is the object of a verb other than these two, it takes the def. obj. suffix

yuzmeğ (yüzme) serem, I love swimming
Adalara gitmegi (görmek) düşünüyordum, I was thinking of going to the Islands
oraya ugramam unutum, I forgot to call there

Some examples are given below of uses of the forms set out in § 129. Note particularly the following

(a) The dative of -mel or -me expresses purpose

dun onu olmeyce gittim we went to see him yesterday
sigara almak sizi gittigim I am going to buy cigarettes

(b) The locative of -mel is used together with the verb to be, to me in ‘is was in-the act of’ or as a simple present or past tense gittiktedir, ‘he is going, he goes’, söylemekte idi he was saying he said’ This construction furnishes the present tense most common in newspaper language e.g

Milli futbol takımı mız sini Roma da oyunacktadır, Our national football-team is now playing in Rome
sını Roma da oyunackt ta olan milli futbol takımımı*, Our team which is now playing in Rome (in-the-act of playing being our team)

(c) -me with possessive suffixes expresses the object of an order, a request or a hope

Bekle-mez-i vicı ederim, I request your waiting, I should like you to wait
Oda-ya gir-me-m-i söyledi (he said my-entering . . .), He told me to enter the room. 
Buraya gel-me-niz-i ıstiyorum, I want you to come here.

(d) Verbal nouns in -me are also used as adjectives:

yaz-, to write; yazma kitaplar, manuscript books
dol-, to be filled; dolma kalem, fountain-pen
doğ-, to be born, büyü-, to grow up; doğma büyüme Istanbul-ludur, He’s an Istanbul man, born and bred.
as-, to hang; asma köprü, suspension bridge

Examples:

Bunu söylemek-le fena mi etti? (by-saying this, bad did he do?), Did he do wrong in saying this?
Onu beklem-e-nin s Yad-a-stı yok (of-awaiting him its-use non-existent), There’s no use in waiting for him.
genç olma-stı-nu rağmen, in spite of his-being young
okuma kitabi (reading its-book), reading-book
beklme salonu (waiting its-hall), waiting-room
yürüyüş, way of walking, gait
görüş, way of seeing, outlook
alıyveriş (taking-giving), commerce
nine-m-in hatırl-a-yış-lar-tı, my grandmother’s reminiscences

Note: From a few verbal nouns in -iş adjectives are formed by the addition of -li and -лиз (§§ 86, 87): göster-, ‘to show’; gösteriş, ‘ostentation’; gösterişli, ‘ostentatious’; gösterişsiz, ‘unostentatious’; elver-, ‘to be suitable’; elverişli, ‘suitable’.

131. Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives

It will be seen that several of the words given below incorporate the 3rd-person-possessive suffix, e.g., bir-i, ‘one of them’. This may refer back to a previously mentioned class of people, as in çocuklardan biri (§ 100 (1)) or to a ‘them’ as vague as the ‘they’ of ‘they say’: biri geldi, ‘someone came’.

Note that kim-i and çoğ-u may be used adjectivally; the possessive suffix then loses its force: ‘some, most’, not ‘some of them, most of them’.

Remember the ‘ pronominal n’ (§ 71); e.g., ‘to somebody’ is bir-i-n-e. The of bazı is not a suffix, as the accentuation shows.

The possessive suffix is doubled in bir-i-si, kim-i-si, hep(-i-)si and şey-i-si.
biri, birisi, one, someone

Biri bu yan-a gitti, biri şu yana, One went this way (to this side), one that way.

Birisi geldi, sizi sordu, Someone came (and) asked-for you.

biri may follow a singular noun in the genitive case:

Padişah-in biri, one of (the class of) Sultan, a certain Sultan herif-in biri, some bloke

öbür, 'the other' (§ 37 (3)); öbürün, 'the other one':

Şu iki adamdan biri kardeşimiz, öbürü (öbür adam) kim? Of those two men, one is your brother; who is the other one?

diğer, başka, 'other'; başka-st, bir başka-st, 'another one, someone else'; başka-ları, 'some others':

Ben bu haber-i başkasından aldım, I received this news from someone else.

bazı, kim-i, kimisi, 'some, someone': bazı insanlar, kimi insanlar, bazıları, 'some people'; bazı-mız, kimin-mız, 'some of us'; bazı-mız, kimi-niz, 'some of you':

Kimi kahve sever, kimi çay, some like coffee, some like tea.

çok, 'many, much'; çoğun-lu, 'most of it, most of them, most'; çoğun-müz, 'most of us'; çoğun zaman, 'most of the time'; çoğun insanlar, 'most people'.

biraz, 'a little'; birkaç, 'a few, several'; birçok, 'a good many, quite a lot of':

Biraz şeker verir misiniz? Will you give (me) a little sugar?

birkaç kitap, a few books (cf. § 91 (2))

kitapların birkaç, a few of the books

birçok ev, birçok evler, a good many houses

bütün, 'whole, all'; bütün gun, 'the whole day'; bütün gunler, 'all the days'.

her, 'every'; herkes, 'everybody'; hergun, 'every day'; her yerde, 'everywhere'; hervakit, her zaman, 'always'; herhangi, 'any'.

her is also the equivalent of ' -ever ' in ' whoever, whenever ', etc. Cf. § 158 (7).
Lesson Eight

hep, ‘all, wholly, always, entirely, still’; hep-imiz, ‘all of us’; hep-iniz, ‘all of you’; hepsi, ‘all of them/it, everybody’:

Hasta nasıldır?—Hep öyle, How’s the patient?—Still the same (thus).

şey (‘thing’) is used for ‘what-do-you-call-it/him’:

Şey-i gördük, arkadaşımızı, We saw what-do-you-call-him; your friend.

With this word the 3rd-person-possessive suffix may be doubled:

Bu kaptın şeysi nerede—anahtar-i? Where’s the what-do-you-call-it of this door—its key?

birbir-i, ‘one another’; birbir-i-ni severler, ‘they love one another’; birbir-imiz-i severiz, ‘we love one another’; birbir-iniz-i seversiniz, ‘you love one another’.

132. ‘self’

In addition to its adjectival use (§ 72, Note), kendi may take the possessive suffixes to give the sense of ‘myself, thyself’, etc.:

(Ben) kend-i-m böyle düşünüyorum, I myself think so.

Bunu kim kıldı?—(Siz) kend-i-niz, Who broke this?—You yourself.

The 3rd-person suffix -şi is often omitted; ‘him-, her- or itself’ is kendisi or kendi, the pronominal n being inserted before case-endings with either form; e.g., ‘to himself’ is kendine or kendisine.

kendi(si) is often used simply for ‘he, she, it’; compare the stage Irish ‘himself’ for ‘he’.

The reflexive sense may be emphasized by repetition:

Kendi kendini yaraladım, I hurt myself.
Kendi kendini (kendisini) yaraladı, He hurt himself.
Kendi kendilerini yaraladılar, They hurt themselves.

kendi-liğ-i-nden, ‘from his self-ness’ means ‘spontaneously, of his/its own accord’.

133. Telling the Time

Saat kaç? (‘hour how-many?’), What’s the time?
Saat bir (hour one), One o’clock, or simply bir, One.
(Saat) üçburgh, Half-past three.
(Saat) **iki-yi on geçiyor** (ten is passing hour two), Ten past two.
(Saat) **yedi-yi çeyrek geçiyor**, Quarter past seven.
(Saat) **beş yirmi var** (to hour five there is twenty), Twenty to five.
(Saat) **on bir-çeyrek var**, Quarter to eleven.
Saat kaçta? At what time?
(Saat) **ikide**, At two o'clock.
(Saat) **üç buçukta**, At half-past three.

‘At — minutes past/to the hour’ is expressed by an adverbial form of the verbs **geçmek**, ‘to pass’, and **kalmak**, ‘to remain’, the number of the hour being in the def. obj. or dative case respectively:

(Saat) **beş-i yirmi geçe** (twenty passing hour five), At twenty past five.
(Saat) **beş-e yirmi kala** (twenty remaining to five), At twenty to five.

**Note**: sularında (‘in its waters’), ‘round about’; saat dokuz sularında, ‘round about 9 o’clock’; sekiz, sekiz buçuk sularında geldi, ‘he came, round about eight or half past’.

**Vocabulary 8**

- **e altık**, accustomed to
  - **altın**, gold
Anatolu, Anatolia
ayrı, separate
beş, harm
belli, evident, clear
cep, pocket
-e cıkışmak, to scold, tell off
cırkin, ugly
dedikodu, gossip
defa, kere, time, occasion
dakikat (-ti), attention, care
doğmak, to be born, rise (sun, etc.)
doktor, hekim, doctor
dönmek, to turn, return
edebiyat (-ti), literature
-e engel olmak, to be the obstacle to, prevent
Erzurum, Erzurum (city in eastern Anatolia)
hastabakıts, nurse
-ilâc, medicine, drug
-e láyh, worthy of, to
mendil, handkerchief
Mustafa Kemal (-ti), Name of the founder of the Republic, later surnamed Atatürk (-kü)
nâzir, minister
niyet (-ti), intention
nutuk (-tkü), speech; nutuk söylemek, to make a speech
ricâ etmek, to request
sebep, cause, reason
LESSON EIGHT

sürmek, to last, take (time) -den vazgeçmek, to give up,
teşkil etmek, to constitute, form abandon the idea of
Vahdettin, name of the last vesile, pretext, opportunity
Sultan yer, place
-e varmak, to reach, arrive at yetmek, to suffice
vatan, motherland

Exercise 8

(10) Bu vatan için neler yapmadık!
Kimimiz olduk, kimimiz nutuk söylediğ.

(B) Translate into Turkish: (1) It’s ten to eight; at ten to eight; it’s a quarter past one; at a quarter past one; they come about nine or half past. (2) This work is worthy to hold (a) place in our literature. (3) I’ve given up the idea of going to Erzurum to-day. (4) I request that you listen to me with attention. (5) At this rate (‘with this manner-of-walking’) we shall have reached their house before seven o’clock. (6) This money is not sufficient to buy a gold watch. (7) This job won’t take five minutes. (8) Does this constitute (a) reason for your taking my car? (9) Who prevented your doing this job? (10) Men don’t live to eat, they eat to live.
LESSON NINE

134. THE *IMİŞ* FORM OF THE VERB ‘TO BE’

*imiş*, to which may be added the Type I verb-endings with the exception of *dir*, means ‘is said to be’ or ‘was said to be’; its use shows that the speaker has no first-hand knowledge of what he is describing: *Kızı gayet güzel imiş,* ‘His daughter is/was very beautiful, I’m told’.

Just as with *idim* (§ 82), the initial *i* may be dropped and the -*miş* used as a suffix, subject to the fourfold vowel-harmony: *Gayet güzel bir kızı varmiş,* ‘He has/had a very beautiful daughter, they say’. Like *idim* too, *imiş* is unaccented.

*imiş* may be used after any tense-base except the *di*-past, to indicate lack of first-hand knowledge:

*Profesor yarın gelecekmiş,* The Professor’s supposed to be coming to-morrow.

*Tren-le gidiyor muslar* (*gidiyorlarmış*), They’re going by train, I’m told.

It may also follow the past participle (§ 122); if I hear that there is a rumour that I have gone to China, I may say *Ben *çin’e gitmiş *imişim!* ‘I’m supposed to have gone to China!’ (‘I-am-according-to-hearsay having-gone . . .’). Note that in this construction the *imiş* is usually separate not suffixed, to avoid the ugly *gitmişmişim*.

-*miş* may be added to the present, aorist and future bases before *gibi*, ‘like’, to convey a doubt of the reality of the action: * Ağlya-mış gibi gözlerini sılyordu,* ‘He was wiping his eyes as though he were crying’.

135. THE *-MIŞ* TENSE OF OTHER VERBS

(1) *-miş* has a different force when attached to the stems of verbs other than ‘to be’. Besides forming the past participle (§ 122), it is the sign of a tense which is sometimes called the narrative past, but which in this book will be called the *miş*-past. It differs from the *di*-past in that in the 3rd person usually (but see (2) below), sometimes also in the 1st and 2nd persons, it
implies a lack of positive knowledge. It differs from the *imis* form of 'to be': (a) in being exclusively a past and never a present tense; (b) in that *imis* invariably implies a lack of positive knowledge.

*gelmisim*, (I gather that) I have come, came  
gelmisinsin, (I gather that) thou hast come, came  
gelmis, I gather that he has come, came  
gelmistir, he has come, came  
gelmisiz, (I gather that) we have come, came  
gelmisinsiniz, (I gather that) you have come, came  
gelmisler, I gather that they have come, came  
gelmislerdir, they have come, came

The *s* of the 2nd person is often dropped in pronunciation:  
gelmisin, gelmisiniz.

(2) The addition of -*dir* to the 3rd person in the written language removes the idea of uncertainty. *gelmistir, gelmislerdir* are the usual forms of the 3rd person past tense in newspaper Turkish: General A. bugün şehrinize geldim, 'General A. came to our city to-day'.

Beginners tend to think that -*miştir* is used in newspapers out of modesty, in recognition that what a newspaper tells its readers is but hearsay. The wrongness of this belief is clear from the following considerations: (a) The past tense of 'to be' in newspaper use is a self-confident *idi*, not a diffident *imis*. (b) In headlines, where it is important to save space, the shorter *geldi* (for instance) is used, while the full text will have *gelmistir*, synonymous but longer by four letters (similarly for the present tense the headline will have *gelyor* while the text has *gelmektedir*—§130 (b)). (c) It is only in the past tense that the *miş* appears: if the General’s visit is to-morrow, the verb will be *gelecek(tir)*, not *geleckmis*.

(3) To summarise:

*geldi* (written and spoken), he came, has come  
gelmiş (written and spoken), I gather that he’s come  
gelmistir (written), he came, has come  
gelmistir (spoken), he must have come

The uncertainty implied in this last comes not from the *miş* but from the *dir* (§67 (3)).

(4) *dir* is sometimes added to the 1st and 2nd persons of the *miş*-past, to make a confident assertion of a fact not positively known (like a B.B.C. compère’s 'Of course you all know our
guest-star’): gŏrmüşsünüzdzür, ‘you have certainly seen, I expect you’ve seen’.

Note: In some districts of Eastern Anatolia, -miş and not -di is the usual base of the simple past tense.

136. The Pluperfect Tense

(1) We have seen how the ‘I was’ endings are attached to the present, future and aorist bases, to make the equivalents of the English ‘I was going, was about to go, used to go’. They may also be added to the -miş participle to give the equivalent of our ‘I had gone’: gitmiştım, gitmiştin, gitmiştı, gitmiştik, gitmiştiniz, gitmiştiler or gitmiştlerdi. This tense has none of the uncertainty of the miş-past.

(2) There is a far less common pluperfect made from the di-past, in two possible ways:

(a) gittiydım (for gitti idım), I had gone
gittiydın (for gitti idıın), thou hadst gone
gittiydı (for gitti idi), he had gone
gittiydık (for gitti idık), we had gone
gittiydiniz (for gitti idıniz), you had gone
gittiydiler (for gitti idiler), they had gone

(b) gittimdı (for gittim idı), I had gone
gittindi (for gittin idi), thou hadst gone
gittişdi (for gittiş idi), he had gone
gittişti (for gittiş idı), we had gone
gittinizdi (for gittiniz idı), you had gone
gittilerdi (for gittiler idı), they had gone

The pluperfect is used much more frequently than in English to show that one action in the past preceded another action in the past: see, e.g., Exercise 14, sentence 11.

137. The Passive and the Reflexive Verb

A verb is said to be passive when the subject does not act but is acted upon. Active: ‘The missionary ate.’ Passive: ‘The missionary was eaten.’

A reflexive verb is one whose action does not affect any external object but ‘reflects’ back on to the subject: ‘I washed myself.’

(1) Passive verbs are formed in Turkish as follows:

(a) to stems ending in any consonant but l the syllable -il₄ is added;
(b) to stems ending in \( l \) the syllable \(-in^{4}\) is added;

(c) to stems ending in a vowel, \(-n\) is added.

\( \text{çekmek, to pull, withdraw; çekilmek, to be pulled, withdrawn} \)
\( \text{tutmak, to hold; tutulmak, to be held} \)
\( \text{yazmak, to write; yazilmak, to be written} \)
\( \text{görmek, to see; görülmek, to be seen} \)
\( \text{bulmak, to find; bulunmak, to be found} \)
\( \text{almak, to take, buy; alınmak, to be taken, bought} \)
\( \text{yıkmak, to wash; yıkmak, to be washed} \)
\( \text{söylemek, to say; söylenmek, to be said} \)
\( \text{okumak, to read; okunmak, to be read} \)

(2) Reflexive verbs are formed as follows:

(a) to stems ending in a consonant the syllable \(-in^{4}\) is added;

(b) to stems ending in a vowel, \(-n\) is added.

\( \text{bulunmak, to find oneself} \)
\( \text{çekinmek, to withdraw oneself, refrain} \)
\( \text{yıkanmak, to wash oneself} \)
\( \text{söylemek, to talk to oneself, mumble} \)

(3) Comparison of the two preceding lists will show that, in verbs whose stems end in a vowel or \( l \), the reflexive and passive forms are identical. Where confusion might arise, the passive is distinguished by a doubly passive suffix: \( \text{söyle-n-il-nuk, 'to be said'} \), while the reflexive sense may be unambiguously conveyed by the reflexive pronoun \( kendi kendini } (§132). \)

(4) The passive of compound verbs formed with \( \text{etmek} \) is expressed either with the passive \( \text{ed-il-mek} \) or with a passive-looking form of \( \text{olmak: olunmak. tatbik etmek, 'to apply'; tatbik ediliyor} \)
\( \text{or tatbik olunuyor, 'it is being applied'} \).

The two common exceptions to this rule are \( \text{kaybetmek, 'to lose'} \),
\( \text{passive: kaybolmak, 'to be lost'} \), and \( \text{tiraz etmek, 'to shave (someone)'} \),
\( \text{tiraz olmak, 'to be shaved, have a shave'} \).

(5) When a verb is made passive, the former object of the verb becomes its subject: ‘I caught the ball’; ‘the ball was caught’. In Turkish, intransitive verbs (§117) may be made passive; as there was no object to the active form, there can be no subject to the passive form, so such verbs are said to be used impersonally. Active: \( \text{istasyona bu yoldan giderler, 'they go by this way to the station'} \);
Passive: \( \text{istasyona bu yoldan gid-il-ir, 'one may go by this way . . .'} \) (‘going-is-done’). This construction is the best
means of rendering the English indefinite ‘one’: *Kaç yaşında asker ol-un-ur?* ‘At what age does one become a soldier?’ (‘... is-becoming-done?’).

Reflexive verbs, too, may be used in the impersonal passive: *Burada yıka-n-il-maz* (‘Here washing-oneself is not done’), ‘One may not wash here’. Cf. §150, Note.

(6) *başlamak,* ‘to begin’, is made passive when used with a passive verb: *rapor-u basmağa başladsılar,* ‘they have begun to print the report’; *rapor bas-il-mağạ başla-n-di,* ‘the report has-been-begun to-be-printed’.

(7) *bulunmak,* ‘to find oneself’, is commonly used for ‘to be’: several examples will be found in subsequent exercises.

*edimmek,* reflexive of *etmek,* means ‘to get, acquire’.

*görünmek,* reflexive of *görmek,* means ‘to appear, seem’.

*geçinmek* (*geşmek,* ‘to pass’) means ‘to live, get on (with someone)’.

For the passive of *anlamanak,* ‘to understand’, *anlaşılmacak* is used.

(8) To indicate the agent of a passive verb, we may use the postposition *tarafından* (§126 (3)): *fincan, hizmetçi tarafından ku-ıl-dı,* ‘the cup was-broken by the servant’. This use is not very frequent, because it is simpler to say *hizmetçi fincanı kırdı,* ‘the servant broke the cup’. More common is the adverbial suffix *-ce* (§96 (3)), as in *Bu iş-e hükümet-çe karar ver-il-mustür* (‘to this work governmentally decision has-been-given’), ‘This work has been decided on by the Government’.

138. As in English, names of materials may be used as adjectives or nouns:

*gümüş-ten yap-ıl-mış bir saat,* a watch made from-silver; *bir gümüş saat,* a silver watch

*mukavva-dan yapılmış bir kutu,* a box made from cardboard; *bir mukavva kutu,* a cardboard box

‘Railway’ is either *demiryolu,* ‘iron its-road’, or *demiryol,* ‘iron road’, the former being more common.

139. *Money, Weights and Measures*

(1) One hundred *kurus,* ‘piastre’, make a *lira,* ‘pound’ (approximately 2s. 6d.). The *kurus* is subdivided into forty *para* (which also means ‘money’), but as the *para* is now (1953) worth three-hundredths of a farthing, this unit is seldom met with, except on excise and charity stamps.
The Italian lira is distinguished from the Turkish by being called lire. The English pound is Ingliz lira-st or isterlin.

(2) The Metric system has been official in Turkey since 1932. Only those parts of it which are in common use are given below: just as in French 100 metres is theoretically un hектомètre but in practice cent mètres, so in Turkish yüz metre is far commoner than bir hектомetre.

santimetre or santim, centimetre—approx. ⅜ inch
metre, metre—approx. 39⋅37 inches
kilomètre, kilometre—approx. ⅜ mile
gram, gramme—approx. ⅜ oz.
kiło, kilogram, kilogramme—approx. 2⋅2 lb.
litre or kilo, litre—approx. 1⅔ pints

(3) There are two equivalents for ‘square’ as in ‘square kilometre’. The older method is to use the Arabic noun murăbbā (-at—§ 48): bir kilometre murăbbat (‘one kilometre its-square’). More frequent nowadays is bir kilometre kare. This apparent violation of the rule that adjectives precede their nouns is explained by the fact that the phrase has been lifted whole from the French kilometre carré.

dönüm, formerly an area 40 paces by 40 paces, is now officially 1000 square metres.

(4) Two officially obsolete measures which one sometimes comes across are the arşın, a linear measure of about 28 inches, and the okka, a weight equal to a little over 2½ lb.

Note: Remember to accentuate in pronunciation the first syllable of metre: bir metresi is ‘a metre-of-it’, whereas bir metresi is ‘a mistress-of-his’ (the French maîtresse).

140. ‘A glass of water’

In expressions consisting of a number, a measure and the name of a commodity, such as ‘a glass of water, a kilo of cheese, two packets of cigarettes, ten metres of curtaining-material’, the ‘of’ is not translated: bir bardak su, bir kilo peynir, iki paket sigara, on metre perdelik kumaş. Compare the German ein Glas Bier, ‘a glass (of) beer’. Note also the similar use of words meaning ‘sort’: bir yeni tip uçak, ‘a new type (of) aircraft’; her çeşit insan, ‘every kind (of) man’.

The same construction is used with expressions formed with dolu ‘full’, which with the 3rd-person-possessive suffix means
96

Türkisch

‘-ful’: bir kaşık dolu-su şeker (‘a spoon its-full sugar’), ‘a spoonful of sugar’. ‘A handful’ is avuç dolusu, not el . . ., avuç being ‘the hollow of the hand’.

141. The Locative Case

-de may usually be rendered ‘at’, ‘in’, or ‘on’. It is also used with words denoting qualities, where we would use ‘of’:

- on bir metre uzun-ğuğunda bir ip, a rope 11 metres long (in the length of . . .)
- o kılsık-ta bir adam, a man of that aspect
- bal renginde kumaş, cloth of the colour of honey
- güvecin yumurta-sı büyüklüğünde bir taş, a stone of the size of a pigeon’s egg.

Note: Kaç yaşındasınız? ‘How old are you?’ (‘in the age of how-many are you?’) — Otuz yaşında-yım, ‘I’m thirty’.

Vocabulary 9

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Turkish</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>alay</td>
<td>regiment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>albay</td>
<td>Colonel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ama</td>
<td>but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aralık</td>
<td>interval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ayrılmak</td>
<td>to be set apart, to depart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>başarmak</td>
<td>to accomplish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boy</td>
<td>stature, length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>çap (-fp)</td>
<td>diameter, calibre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daima</td>
<td>always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-e dair</td>
<td>about, relating to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>değnek</td>
<td>stick, rod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diken, thorn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emek</td>
<td>toil; emekli, pensioned, retired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emir (-mri)</td>
<td>order, command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General (-li)</td>
<td>General</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gül</td>
<td>rose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haylı</td>
<td>pretty much, quite considerably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hemen</td>
<td>immediately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kalın</td>
<td>thick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kolay</td>
<td>easy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>komutan</td>
<td>commander</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>konak</td>
<td>mansion, government house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kore</td>
<td>Korea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kum</td>
<td>sand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lâkîrdî</td>
<td>talk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>müddet (-tt)</td>
<td>period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parça</td>
<td>piece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pencere</td>
<td>window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>savaş</td>
<td>war, fighting, combat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>susmak</td>
<td>to be silent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-e yaşamak</td>
<td>to be surprised at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taraf</td>
<td>side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taş</td>
<td>stone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tercih etmek</td>
<td>to prefer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terfi etmek</td>
<td>to promote, to be promoted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tevkif etmek</td>
<td>to arrest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tören, ceremony</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuğgeneral (-li)</td>
<td>Brigadier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ulaş, ‘The Nation’ (a newspaper)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uzun</td>
<td>long</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
üzmek, to distress, grieve 
yanyana, side by side
vilâyet (-ti), province *
yazı, writing, article
yabancı, stranger, foreigner 
yükselmek, to rise, ascend

Exercise 9


(B) Translate into Turkish: (1) I suppose I have always preferred the cinema to the theatre. (2) A day's train journey is covered ('is taken') in an hour and a half by aeroplane. (3) While I was looking out of the window last night, snow fell. (4) While I was sleeping last night, snow fell. (5) I hear you came to see me yesterday; I was very much distressed at ('to') my not being at home. (6) They say the thornless rose does not occur. (7) You will be quite considerably tired. Because this is not a job which is easily accomplished. (8) The sand-hills here rose in some places to as much as sixty-nine metres. (9) Four times nine makes thirty-six. (10) Don't distress yourself.

* Vilâyet, the largest administrative division, governed by a Vâli. Each of its subdivisions is a kaza, governed by a Kaymakam. The new terms are il, ilbây, ilçe and ilçe-bay respectively.
LESSON TEN

142. THE *dik* PAST PARTICIPLE

Besides the past participle in -miş, there is another, formed by adding -dik to the verb-stem, but in the absolute case this is little used except in some frozen forms.*

- *bir bildik*, *bir tandık*, an acquaintance
- *işit-il-me-dik*, unheard-of
- *gör-ül-me-dik* (not-seen), extraordinary
- *ol-üm-me-dik*, unprecedented

143. THE RELATIVE PARTICIPLES

(1) The participles described in §§ 120–3 are used when in English the relative pronoun—‘ who, which, that ’—is the subject of the relative sentence: ‘ the man who came, the light that failed, the train which will leave at noon ’. In any other type of relative sentence—‘ the man whom we saw, the light which you switched on, the train he came on ’ (i.e., on which he came)—Turkish uses a construction which, though neat and logical, usually strikes English-speakers as one of the most alien features of the language. It will be dealt with at some length, as unless this construction is fully grasped it is scarcely possible to read a paragraph in Turkish.

(2) To the -dik and -ceke participles, a possessive suffix is added, to make a word meaning ‘ pertaining to my/thy/his, etc., doing. . . . ’ -dik is used for present as well as past time, -ceke for future time. Thus from *gelmek*:

- *geldiğim*, pertaining to my coming
- *geldiğin*, pertaining to thy coming
- *geldiği*, pertaining to his coming
- *geldiğimiz*, pertaining to our coming
- *geldiğiniz*, pertaining to your coming
- *geldikleri*, pertaining to their coming

* By ‘ frozen forms ’ is meant, e.g., such words as the English ‘ childhood, motherhood ’, the ‘ -hood ’ of which is no longer a live suffix; we cannot say ‘ soldierhood ’ or ‘ scholarhood ’.
geleceğim, geleceğin, geleceği, geleceğimiz, geleceğiniz, gelecekleri, 'pertaining to my, etc., future coming'.

Examples:

geldiğim tren (train pertaining-to-my-coming), the train on which I came
alacağınız kitap (book pertaining-to-your-future-buying),
the book which you are going to buy
oturduğunuz ev pahalı mı? Is the house in-which-you-are-living expensive?
Herkes olduğu yerde kalsın, Let everyone remain where he is
(in the place pertaining-to-his-being).
Londra'ya gittiğimiz zaman kendisi hasta idi, When we went
(the time pertaining-to-our-going) to London, he was ill.

This last example shows the usual way of rendering 'when’-clauses in Turkish.

The clumsy locution with ‘pertaining to’ has been chosen as being the only equivalent that fits all the examples. We may memorize the translation ‘which I gave’ for verdigiim, but this will not work with intransitive verbs: ‘the train which he came (on), the place which I went (to)’. The beginner will therefore be well advised to fix it in his memory that -diğim preceding a noun means ‘pertaining to my . . . ing’.

(3) Like any other word including a possessive suffix, the relative participle may have a possessor expressed, in the genitive case if definite: mektub-u, ‘his letter’; kardeşim-in mektub-u, ‘my brother’s letter’. So:

gönderdiği mektub, the letter which he sent
kardeşim gönderdiği mektub, the letter which my brother
sent (pertaining to his—my brother’s—sending)
benim geldiğim gün, the day I came

(4) If the subject is indefinite it remains in the absolute case: Kedi bulun-ma-diğ-i yerde fare baş kaldırr, ‘In the place where there is no cat (pertaining to its—cat—not being), the mouse raises (its) head’.

(5) halde is used after relative participles to mean either ‘although’ or ‘in a state of’:

bunu bildiğim halde, although I knew/know this (in-the-state pertaining-to-my-knowing)
elinde bir bıçak olduğu halde, having a knife in his hand (in-the-state pertaining-to-its—a knife—being in his hand)
(6) yerde after a future relative participle means ‘instead of’: Evde bekliyecğimiz yerde tiyatroya doğru yürümeye başladı, ‘Instead of waiting at home we began to walk towards the theatre’.

Note: geleceğim, ‘pertaining to my future coming’, may be distinguished from geleceğim, ‘I shall come’, by its position in the sentence; cf. § 124. They are also accented differently; the possessive -im of the former carries the accent, while in the latter the -im is ‘I am’, and the accent precedes it.

144. Like other adjectives, relative participles may be used as nouns. This use is a grammatical device for making noun-clauses; for attaching to a verbal notion the case-suffixes and postpositions used after nouns. Its commonest function is to express indirect speech, by putting a verb into the def. obj. case as object of another verb, e.g., ‘to say, to hear, to know’:

geldiniz, you came; geldiğiniz-i söyledi, He said that you came (he stated the fact-of-your-coming).

Examples:

(a) Genitive case: gelecek-leri-nın muije-si (‘of-their-being-about-to-come its-good-news’), ‘the good news that they will be coming’.

(b) Dative case: išt-išt-im-e göre (‘according to-my-hearing’), ‘according to what I heard’.

The dative of the future relative participle means ‘instead of’: oraya gideceğime buraya geldim, ‘instead of going there I came here’. Cf. § 143 (6).

(c) Locative case:

geldiğimiz-de, at-our-coming, when we came
çalış-acag-mız-da yuppe-m yok (in-your-future-working my-doubt non-existent), I have no doubt that you will work.

(d) Ablative case:

Siz-i ara-dığ-indan haberiniz yok mu? Don’t you know he’s looking-for you? (haven’t you news of-his seeking you: cf. § 100 (t)).

zengin ol-ma-dığ-indin, because he’s not rich (from-his-not-being . . .
Geldiğinden beri hastanedeki yatıyor, Since he came he’s been lying in hospital.

(e) with için ‘for, because of’: Doğru-yu soylediğim için kızdı, ‘He was angry because I told the truth’.
(f) with gibi, ‘like’; bildiğiniz gibi, ‘as you know’: Haberi al-diğ-ı gibi yola çıkkt, ‘Just as he received the news he set out (to the road)’.

(g) with kadar, ‘as much as’: istediğiniz kadar al, ‘take as much as you want’.

145. Negative Sentences

Kimse, ‘someone, person’, in negative sentences means ‘no-body’:

Kimse gelmiyor, nobody is coming (exactly like the French personne ne vient)

Kimse-si yok, he has nobody

Bir şey, ‘a thing, anything’, is similarly used to mean ‘nothing’: bir şey değil, ‘it is nothing’ (used in reply to teşekkür ederim, ‘thank you’).

Bir türlü, ‘a sort’, in negative sentences means ‘in no way, no how’: bir türlü anlaamadı, ‘he didn’t understand at all’.

Hiç, (a) strengthens negatives. It is written as one word with a following bir:

Hiç bir şey istemem, I want nothing at all

Hiç bir yer-e gitmezler, they go nowhere

Hiç bir vakit (zaman) gelmeziniz, you never come

(b) ‘nothing’:


Bir hic için kızdı, he got angry for (a) nothing

(c) ‘ever, never’ in questions: Hicz Konya’ya gittiniz mi?, ‘Have you ever been to Konya?’

Ne ... ne ..., ‘neither ... nor ...’: Ne onu gördüm ne başkasını, ‘I saw neither him nor anybody else’.

Yok colloquially means not only ‘there isn’t’ but also ‘certainly not!’ It is also used for ‘not at home’: siz yokken kardeşiniz geldi, ‘while you were out your brother came’.

Note: Turks do not shake their heads to express negation; the conversational Turkish for ‘no’ is any or all of the three following: (a) a slight raising of the head; (b) closing the eyes; (c) the clicking of the tongue with which we indicate mild vexation and which we write ‘tut!’
146. Translation of ‘can’

-(y)ebil/- (y)abil- added to verb-stems expresses potentiality:

gelmek, to come; gel-ebil-mek, to be able to come
geldiniz, you came; gelebildiniz, you were able to come
söyle-n-ir, it is said; söyle-ebil-ir, it can be said
oku-yacak musiniz? are you going to read?; oku-yabil-ecek
misiniz? are you going to be able to read?
görenler, those who see; gör-ebil-en-ler, those who can see
oku-duş-um yazı, the writing which I read; oku-yabil-diğ-im
yazı, the writing which I was/am able to read

Note (i): It is possible, though rare, for negative stems to be followed by this suffix: yaz-m-yabil-ir-im, ‘I am able not to write’, i.e., I’m not obliged to write if I don’t want to.

Note (ii): The resemblance to our word ‘able’ is a useful aid to the memory, but is sheer coincidence; the -bil is the stem of the verb meaning ‘to know’; hence the lack of vowel-harmony.

147. Translation of ‘cannot’

The -ebil suffix is not used for ‘cannot’; instead, an accented -e/-a is inserted before the negative -me/-ma:

ver-me-mek, not to give; ver-e-me-mek, to be unable to give
kullan-ul-m-yacak, it will not be used; kullan-ul-a-m-yacak, it
will not be able to be used
almaz, he does not take; al-a-maz, he cannot take
olmaz, it does not occur; ol-a-maz, it cannot occur, be
tut-ul-ma-dt, it was not held; tut-ul-a-ma-dt, it could not be held
başla-m-yor mu? isn’t he beginning?; başl-ya-m-yor mu?
Can’t he begin?
yap-ma-diğ-sm bir şey, a thing I did not do; yap-a-ma-diğ-sm
bir şey, a thing I could not do

148. Adverbs of Place

(1) içeri, inside
dışarı, outside
yukarı, up, upstairs
aşağı, down, downstairs
ileri, forward
geri, back, backward, behind
öte, on the farther side, yonder
beri, on or to the side nearer the speaker, hither
(2) When indicating motion towards a direction, these may be used just like their English equivalents:

- kapına içeri gitti, the porter went inside
- aşağı geldi, he came downstairs
- geri döndük, we turned back
- beri geliniz, come over here

They may also take the dative suffix (whereas the words listed in § 97 must take it when indicating motion towards) with no difference of meaning: içeriye gitti, aşağıya geldi, geriye döndük, beriye geliniz. For 'to the farther side', the usual form is öteye not öte.

(3) When the locative or ablative suffixes are added, the final vowel of içeri, dışarı, yukarı and ileri is often dropped:

- içerde or içerede oturuyorduk, we were sitting inside
- dışardan or dışardan geldi, he came from outside
- yukarıda or yukarıda kimse yok, there's nobody upstairs
- ilderde or ileride, in the future, in front

(4) These words may be used adjectively, although iç and dış are used in preference to içeri and dışarı for 'internal' and 'external':

- yukarı kat, the upper storey
- su-yun beri/öte yakası, the nearer/farther bank of the stream

N.B. Saat beş dakika ileridir/geridir, 'The clock is five minutes fast/slow'.

(5) They are also used as nouns:

- ev-in içeri-si karanlık, the inside of the house is dark
- cephe-nin biraz geri-sinde durduk, we stopped a little way behind the front (of-the-front a-little at-its-rear)

(6) The suffix -ki (§ 98) may be added directly to öte and beri and to the locative case of the others:

- öteki bina, that building which is over there, yonder building
- yukarıdakiler, those who are upstairs

(7) Note the following expressions:

- aşağı yukarı (down up), more or less, approximately
- ötede beride dolaşmak, to stroll around (there here)
- öteberi almağa çıktım, I went out to buy some odds and ends (that-this)
- öteden beri (§ 101), from of old
Türkisch

149. üzere, üzre, now replaced in its original sense of ‘on’ by
üzerinde, is used:

(1) With the relative participle to mean ‘as’: yukarada yazılılığı
üzere, ‘as is written above’.
(2) With -mek to mean: (a) ‘so as to, in order to’—cocuklar
okul-a gitmek üzre hazırlanyorlar, ‘the children are-getting-ready to
go to school’; (b) ‘on condition that, with the proviso that’—
varın geri vermek üzre bu kitabı alabilirsiniz, ‘you can take this book
on condition that you give it back (‘to give back’) to-morrow’;
(c) ‘on the point of’—arkadaşımız gitmek üzereydir, ‘your friend is on
the point of going’.

Note: olmak üzre, ‘as being’; cf. olarak, § 162.

Vocabulary 10

álem, world, state of life  
ancak, only  
av, hunt, quarry  
Beyoğlu (-unu), modern resi-
didential and shopping quarter
of Istanbul (‘Pera’)
 bir daha, once more  
-e dolmak, to plunge, be lost in
dolmak, to be full  
döviz, foreign exchange  
eglenmek, to amuse oneself  
el, hand  
elçi, envoy; Buyuk Elçi, Amba-
ssador  
enmiyet, confidence, security
fena, bad  
giymek, to wear, put on (clothes)
gulünç, ridiculous  
haber, news-item; haberler, news;
haber vermek, to make known
harbiye, warfare  
hayat (-ti: § 64), life  
hükümet, hükümet (-ti), govern-
ment
kânun, law  
kovalamak, to chase  
kraliçe, kraliçe, queen  
kumaş, cloth, (woven) stuff  
mahkeme, law-court  
mələmət (-tt), information  
məndərə, cow-shed  
məvvəzə (-zu), subject, topic
muhtesənə, excepted  
resmī, official, formal  
rıvâyət (-ı), rumour
səha, area, field  
salon, hall, auditorium
segmək, to choose, elect
surələmək, to put in a row. line up
soz, word, statement: sözcu,
spokesman
ətəhə, wood, wooden
əklət elmək, to imitate
tat, taste, flavour; tatlı, sweet,
delightful
qətik (-ki), scrutiny, study
tezat, contrast, incongruity
turist, tourist
umma, hope, expect
varmaq, to split, break through
Exercise 10


(B) Translate into Turkish: (1) I had a lot of work last night, I was able to go to bed only at one o’clock. (2) Fly, birds! to the place where I was born. (3) The unexpected stone splits (the) head. (4) The inevitable thing in them was not what they wore but their manner-of-dressing-themselves. (5) I shall let you also know the day I am going to see him. (6) It is doubtful whether I shall go to-day (‘my-future-going is doubtful ’). (7) Those who do not think-about to-morrow from to-day, cannot look with confidence at the future. (8) I shall never forget this kindness (‘goodness’) which you have done to me. (9) How (‘from where’) do I know what sort of stuff you want? (10) He stopped on the wooden bridge where the road passed which went from the city to the cow-sheds . . . he awoke from the delightful state into which he had plunged. He was like a man not knowing what he did (or) what he was going to do.
LESSON ELEVEN

150. THE RECIPROCAL OR CO-OPERATIVE VERB

The addition of -ş to verb-stems ending in a vowel, -iş to those ending in a consonant, often conveys that the action is performed by more than one agent, either in co-operation or in opposition:

sevmek, to love; sevişmek, to love one another
oynamak, to play; oynasmak, to play together
cärpmak, to hit; çarpışmak, to collide
dövmek, to beat; dövüşmek, to fight one another
görmek, to see; görüşmek, to see one another, have an inter-view, converse

Not all verbs in ş have this force; e.g., gelişmek is not ‘to come together’ but ‘to develop’, yetişmek is not ‘to suffice one another’ but ‘to grow up’. Often they have a reflexive sense: karmak, ‘to mix’; karışmak, ‘to mix oneself in, to interfere’.

Note: Reciprocal verbs may be used impersonally in the passive (§ 137 (5)): Arkadaşla dövüş-ül-ür mu? (‘is fighting-with-one another done with-the-friend?’), ‘Does one fight with friends?’

151. THE CAUSATIVE VERB

‘His eyebrows rose; he raised his eyebrows.’ ‘The tree fell; he felled the tree.’ ‘Raised’ and ‘felled’ are causative verbs; he caused his eyebrows to rise, he caused the tree to fall.

(1) Most causative verbs in Turkish are formed by adding -dir to the stem:

bilmek, to know; bildirmek, to make known
olumek, to die; öldürmek, to kill
unutmak, to forget; unutturmak, to cause to forget

(2) Stems of more than one syllable, ending in a vowel, add -t:

oku-mak, to read; oku-t-mak, to cause to read, educate
anlamak, to understand; anlatmak, to explain, narrate, tell
LESSON ELEVEN

(3) Stems of more than one syllable, ending in r or l, often add -t:
   oturmak, to sit; oturtmak, to seat
   darılmak, to be cross; darıl.tmak, to annoy

(4) A few monosyllabic stems, mostly ending in k, add -it\textsuperscript{4}:
   korkmak, to fear; korkutmak, to frighten
   akmak, to flow; akutmak, to let flow

(5) About twenty monosyllabic stems (half of them ending in ç or ş) add -ir\textsuperscript{4}:
   pişmek, to cook (intransitive: sebze pişiyor, the vegetables are cooking);
   pişirmek, to cause to cook, to cook (transitive: sebze-yi pişiriyor, she-is-cooking the vegetables)
   doğmak, to be born; doğurmak, to give birth to
   bitmek, to come to an end; bitirmek, to bring to an end

The other common verbs of this class are:
   batmak, to sink                   düşmek, to fall
   geçmek, to pass                  duymak, to perceive
   uçmak, to fly                    kaçmak, to escape
   içmek, to drink                  aşmak, to pass over
   yatmak, to lie down              doymak, to be satiated

(6) Three common verbs add -er/-ar:
   çıkmak, to go out; çıkarmak, to bring out, extract, expel
   gitmek, to go; gidermek, to remove
   kopmak, to break off, out (intransitive); koparmak, to break off (transitive), to cause to break out

(7) The following form their causative irregularly:
   kalkmak, to rise, depart; kaldırmak, to raise, remove
   görmek, to see; göstermek, to show (also gördürmek, see Note (i))
   emmek, to suck; emzirmek, to suckle (also emdirmek, to cause to suck)

(8) The object of the simple verb remains as object of the causative, while the subject of the simple verb is put into the dative case:
   daktılo mektub-u yazdı, the typist wrote the letter; ben daktılo-ya mektub-u yaz-dırm, I got the typist to write the letter (to-the-typist I-was-the-cause-of-writing)
There is no text in the image.
some of them convey an intensification of the meaning of the simple verb: *sormak* ‘to ask’, *soruşturmak*, ‘to make enquiries’; *aramak* ‘to seek’, *arastırmak*, ‘to investigate, research’; *atmak*, ‘to throw’, *atıstırmak*, ‘to bolt (food), to knock back (drinks)’.

152. **Uses of demek**

(1) As we saw in §144, indirect speech is rendered by the relative participle: *geldiğini gösterdi*, ‘he said that-you-had-come’. If the speaker’s actual words are quoted, *demek* and not *söylemek* is used for ‘to say’. If Osman says to you *Yarın gelmiyecığım*, ‘I shan’t come to-morrow’, you may pass the information on in three ways:

(a) *Osman, yarın gelmiyecığını söyledi* (O. stated his-not-being-about-to-come), Osman said that he wouldn’t come to-morrow.

(b) *Osman yarın gelmiyecığını dedi*, O. said, ‘I shan’t . . .’

(c) *Osman dedi ki yarın gelmiyecığım*, O. said (that), ‘I shan’t . . .’

It will be noticed that part of *demek* may either follow the quoted words (like our ‘“I shan’t come,” said he’) or precede with *ki*, ‘that’. In this construction (c) *ki* is not translated into English, so ‘He said, “No”’ is *Dedi ki Hayır*, while ‘“No,” said he ’ is ‘*Hayır* dedi.’

As the actual words of the speaker can be introduced only by part of *demek*, ‘He shouted, “No”’, ‘“Where?” he asked’, are rendered ‘“No,” saying he shouted’, ‘“Where?” saying he asked’. ‘Saying’ in such contexts is *diye*, an adverbial form like *geçe, kala* (§ 133; cf. § 88, *Note*). ‘Hayır’ *diye haykırdı*; ‘*Nerede*?’ *diye sordu*. ‘Sigara içilmez’ *diye bir leva*, ‘A “No Smoking” sign’ (‘cigarette is-not-smoked saying a board’).

(2) *diye* does not only introduce quotations; it is used to introduce *unspoken* thoughts too:

*Onu gelecek diye bekliyorum* (him ‘he will come’ saying I am awaiting), I am awaiting him in the expectation that he will come.

*Değişiklik olsun diye otobüsle geldik*, For a change (‘change let-there-be’ saying) we came by bus.

*Adet yerini bulsun diye . . .* (‘let custom find its place’ saying), As a matter of form, through force of custom.
Henē the common Ne diye . . .? (‘what saying?’) ‘with what unspoken thoughts, with what motive, what’s the idea of . . .?’ Ne diye sizİ yolladılar? ‘What was their idea in sending you?’ If a self-assertive citizen is told, on entering a railway-compartment, Ter yok! ‘No room!’ and at once notices a vacant seat, he may say Ne diye yer yokmuş? ‘What do you mean, “No room”? ’ The -mus implies that there is no visual confirmation of the statement.

(3) demek is used with the 3rd person singular of any tense of olmak for ‘to mean’, but only when the subject is inanimate, a word or a concept:

Bu söz ne demek(tir) ? (what is this word to say?), What does this word mean?

İngilizcede ‘army’ ordu demek(tir); ‘armies’ de ordular
demek olacak, In-English, ‘army’ means ordu and ‘armies’
will mean (will be to say) ordular.

Bunun ne demek olduğunu anladınız mı? Have you understood
what this means?

With the usual conversational omission of dir, demek alone can be ‘it means’: Demek siz gelmiyeceksiniz, ‘It means you won’t be coming’.

When the subject of ‘to mean’ is a person, use demek istemek : Ne demek istiyorunuz? ‘What do you mean? ’—exactly the French Que voulez-vous dire?

(4) -e demek is ‘to call, to name’: Bu çiçek-e biz gül deriz ; siz
ona ‘rose’ dersiniz, değil mi? ‘We call this flower (‘we say for
this flower’) gül; you call it “rose”, don’t you?’

-e demek can, of course, also be ‘to say to’: Ahmed’e bir diyeyeceğiniz
var mı? ‘Have you anything to say to Ahmet, any message for
Ahmet?’ (‘. . . a that-you-will-say’).

(5) derken, literally ‘while saying’, is also used for ‘and just at
that moment’: Ben tras oluyordum ; derken misafirler geldi, ‘Just
as I was shaving, the guests arrived’.

153. Translation of ‘must’

‘must, ought’ is translated by:

(1) the addition of -meli/-mals to any verb-stem; simple, pas-
itive, reflexive, reciprocal or causative. The ‘I am/was’ endings
are suffixed as required:
gitmeliyim, I must go, ought to go
gitmeler, they must go, ought to go
gitmeli(dir), he must go, ought to go
gitmeliyiz, we must go, ought to go
gitmelisiniz, you must go, ought to go
gitmeli(dir)ler, they must go, ought to go
gitmeli idim (gitmeliydim), I ought to have gone, I had to go
gitmeli idin (gitmeliydin), thou ought to have gone, thou hadst to go etc.

Note: The 3rd singular gitmeli means not only 'he must go' but also impersonally 'one must go, it is necessary to go'. Bir şey-i iyi düşünmeli, ondan sonra söylemeli, 'One-must-think-about a thing thoroughly, after that one-must-speak'.

(2) lazım or gerek, 'necessary', used with a verbal noun:

iyi düşünmek gerek, it is necessary to think well
iyi düşün-me-miz lazım, we must think well (our-thinking well is necessary)
tıraş olma-m lazım, I must shave

154. 'so-and-so'

(1) falan, filân, falanca all mean 'so-and-so, such-and-such':

Ben falan oğlu falanın diye anlatmağa başladı, He began to explain (saying): 'I am so-and-so, son of so-and-so'.

Filân tarihte falanca geldi, On such-and-such a date, so-and-so came.

(2) falan and filân also mean 'and so on, and all that':

Toplanti-da çocuk falan bulunmasın, At the meeting let there be no children and so on (i.e., babies, dogs, giggling girls and other nuisances).

Para falan istemiyorum, I'm not asking-for money or anything like that.

Mart-ta falan gelecekmiş, He's supposed to be coming in March or thereabouts.
(3) Another equivalent of ‘and all that’, very common colloquially, is made by repeating the word in question but with m substituted for the initial consonant or preceding the initial vowel: *Burada kutu yok*, ‘There’s no box here’; *Burada kutu mutu yok*, ‘There’s no box or chest or case or carton or anything of the kind here’. In the first example in (2) above, one could say *çocuk mocuk* instead of *çocuk falan*. *Arkadaş markadas, herkes borçunu vermelidir*, ‘Friend, relative, it doesn’t matter who it is, everyone must pay his debt’.

If the original word begins with m, however, *falan* or *filan* must be used: *Mektup falan geldi mi?*, ‘Have any letters or postcards or parcels or anything like that come?’

*Note*: *falamnct* (§110) is sometimes used for ‘the so-manyth’: *falamnct ev-in falamnct kat-tında oturuyorum diye yazınız*, ‘Write (saying) “I am living on floor number so-and-so of house number so-and-so”’.

155. THE SUFFIX -ip

(1) When a Turkish sentence should contain a pair of verbs (the English equivalents being joined by ‘and’), with the same subject and suffixes, differing only in their stems, it is usual to put the requisite suffixes only with the second stem and to add to the first stem the suffix (-y)ip. Even if both verbs are negative, the first stem is left positive:

(a) *Oturabileceğiz*, We shall be able to sit.
(b) *Konuşabileceğiz*, We shall be able to talk.
(a + b) *Otur-cep konuşabileceğiz*, We shall be able to sit and talk.
(a) *Cesaret-i-ni topla-di*, He gathered his courage.
(b) *Sordu*, He asked.
(a + b) *Cesareti topla-yup sordu*, He plucked up his courage and asked.
(a) *Oku-musun*, You must read.
(b) *Anla-musun*, You must understand.
(a + b) *Oku-yup anlama-musun*, You must read and understand.
*gelip görür*, he comes and sees
*gelip görmez*, he does not come and see
*gelip göremez*, he cannot come and see
*gelip görmelidir*, he must come and see
*gelip görenler*, those who come and see
*gelip görünüz*, come and see
(2) The Turkish way of saying 'I don’t know whether he’ll come or not' is 'I don’t know his-future-coming-and his-future-not-coming', using -ip: *geliş gelmiyecğini bilmiyorum.* Note that in this construction the negative does not also apply to the first verb.

*Note (i):* Though -ip connotes 'and' in itself, it is often re-inforced by a following de (§ 95).

*Note (ii):* Do not use more than one -ip in a sentence.

### Vocabulary 11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Turkish</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>altkomak</strong>, altkoymak</td>
<td>to stop, detain, hold back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>altlamanak</strong></td>
<td>to jump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>batmak</strong></td>
<td>to sink (intransitive), to set (sun, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>beygir</strong></td>
<td>horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bitmek</strong></td>
<td>to finish (intransitive), come to an end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bulaşık</strong></td>
<td>infectious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>delik</strong></td>
<td>hole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>deniz</strong></td>
<td>sea; denizaltı (§ 78), submarine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>er</strong></td>
<td>private soldier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>gazete</strong></td>
<td>newspaper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-e gömmek</strong></td>
<td>to bury, submerge in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hat</strong> (-tti)</td>
<td>line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hazır</strong></td>
<td>present, ready</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ivrur</strong></td>
<td>insistence, persistence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-den ibarettir</strong></td>
<td>consisting (merely) of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-e ihtiyac</strong></td>
<td>need for, of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ilan</strong> (-m)</td>
<td>announcement, advertisement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>inmek</strong></td>
<td>to descend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>işlemek</strong></td>
<td>to work, function; işletme, causing-to-work, administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>kararlık</strong></td>
<td>dark, darkness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>kuduz</strong></td>
<td>rabies, mad dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>kuvvet</strong> (-ti)</td>
<td>power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>makina</strong>, makine</td>
<td>machine, engine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mangası</strong></td>
<td>section (military)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>marshandiz</strong></td>
<td>goods train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>müteber</strong></td>
<td>valid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>muważene</strong></td>
<td>balance, equilibrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>normal</strong> (-li)</td>
<td>normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pastör</strong></td>
<td>Pasteur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sağ</strong></td>
<td>right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sefer</strong></td>
<td>trip, voyage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sezmek</strong></td>
<td>to discern, perceive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sol</strong></td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>televizyon</strong></td>
<td>television, wireless message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>top</strong></td>
<td>ball, gun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>virus</strong></td>
<td>virus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Exercise 11

(A) **Translate into English:**

(B) Translate into Turkish: (1) The work finished yesterday; I finished the work yesterday. (2) We should have had an advertisement printed in the newspapers (‘should have caused-to-print’). (3) Will you get that book down (‘cause-to-descend’) from the shelf? — There’s no book or anything resembling a book on the shelf. (4) ‘What shall I do?’ I was thinking. (5) He’s very formal with everybody. (6) That room over there is more spacious than this. (7) The submarine sank the ship. (8) I have come in order to learn whether or not you have need of me. (9) Come and see me to-morrow. (10) Will you wake me at half-past six?
LESSON TWELVE

156. USES OF THE FUTURE PARTICIPLE

(1) In English we can say 'things to come', meaning things destined to come, and we can also say 'things to eat', meaning things destined not to eat but to be eaten. Turkish has a similar use of the active -eeek participle where one might expect a passive: yiyecek şeyler, 'things to eat'. Comparing § 143, we may regard yiyecek as meaning 'pertaining to future eating'.

Kaşacak zaman geldi mi? Has the time come to run for it?
(the time pertaining-to-fleeing).

Ne okuyacak kitap, ne de konuşacak arkadaşım vardı. I had neither book to read nor friend to talk to.

Utanım!—Allah Allah! Ne var utanacak? I'm ashamed!—
Good heavens! What's there to be ashamed of?

A common application of this principle is with vaziyet or durum, 'position': Bunu yapacak vaziyette (durumda) değiliniz, 'You aren't in a position to do this' ('in the position pertaining to doing this').

(2) The future participle is used with kader to mean 'enough to . . .':

ölüleri uyandıracak kadar gürültü, noise enough to wake the
dead (the amount pertaining to waking . . .)
cüce de-n-eeek kader ufak yapı-lı bir ihtiyaç, an old man small-
built enough to be called 'dwarf'

(3) olacak, 'which will be', is used to mean 'so-called, supposed to be': Arkadaşım olacak adam beni yarın yolda bırakı, 'The man who's supposed to be my friend left me in the lurch ('at mid-way').

157. TRANSLATION OF 'too'

The translation of 'too' is one of the commonest difficulties besetting the student of Turkish. The dictionary equivalent is fazla ('in excess') or luzümundan fazla ('in excess of its necessity'). The fact that both words are of Arabic origin is an indication that we must look elsewhere for the natural Turkish equivalent.
(1) In such a sentence as 'I didn't buy it, it was too dear', 'too' should be translated simply by *soh*, 'very', as the causal connection between the two parts of the sentence is sufficiently plain. *Onu almadım soh pahalı idi.*

(2) *Fazla* may be used if the context is insufficient to convey the sense of 'too'. *Babamız pek sabırlıdır* re 'vel belki biraz fazla sabırlı', 'Your father is very patient -yes, perhaps a little too patient.'

(3) 'He was too tired to undress', 'I am too busy to go to the pictures.' For this type of sentence Turkish uses the construction shown in § 156 (2) *soynun-ami-zaal kader yorgundu* (‘He was tired the amount pertaining to inability to-undress’), *Sinemaya giderimizcel kader mesgulum.*

158 Conditional Sentences

Turkish has a special form of the verb for use where English uses 'if' as *-sle -sa* which like the *di* past takes the type II endings. The conditional of 'to be' is:

*isen* if I am

*iset* if we are

*isen* if thou art

*isem* if you are

*ise* if he is

*iseler* if they are

Alternatively the endings may be suffixed cf § 83. Like *idi* and *imis*, *ise* is unaccented in all its persons whether separate or suffixed *hazer ise* or *hazer imis* if you are ready *hazer desel ise* or *hazer deseler* if you are not ready.

(1) Open conditions if A then B

Put *ise* (-*sen*) etc after the base of the appropriate tense

*bilim sen*, you know; *bili em* if you know

*di nin* he is working; *divsin* if he is working

*imcin* we don't think; *ynem* *en* if we don't drink

*gelce* he is going to come; *gelce* if he is going to come

*verdi* or *vermis* he gave, has given; *inden* or *tərnez-se* if he gave, has given

There are the same alternative ways of forming the conditional of the *di* past as of forming the *di* plus perfect, *isem* (-*sen*) etc may be substituted for the type II endings or *-i* may be suffixed to them.

*geldi isem* (geldi isem or geldimse, if I came had come)

*geldi isen* (geldi isen) or geldimse, if thou camest, hadst come
geldi ise (geldiyse), if he came, had come
geldi isek (geldiysek) or geldikse, if we came, had come
geldi iseniz (geldiyeseniz) or geldinizse, if you came, had come
geldi iseler (geldiyseler) or geldilerse, if they came, had come

Examples:

* Gelirsek mektubu getiririz, If we come we’ll bring the letter.
  Siz gitmezseniz bizi gitmeyiz, If you don’t go, we don’t go.
  Söyliyecekseniz (söyliyecek olursanız) söyleyin, If you’re going to
tell, tell.
  Yemek yiyorsa dışarda bekleyin, If he’s eating, wait outside.
  Anlamadızmaza daha açık konuş-a-mam, If you haven’t under-
stood, I can’t speak more openly.

(2) Remote conditions: ‘ if A should happen (but it’s not very
likely/frequent), then B would/will follow ’.

For this type of sentence we use, not the conditional of ‘ to be ’
attached to the appropriate tense-base of the required verb, but
the conditional form of the verb itself, i.e., -sem, etc., attached to
the verb-stem: gelsem, gelsen, etc.  N.B. isem, ‘ if I am ’; olsam,
‘ if I were, if I should be ’.

Examples:

* Ben sizin yerinizde olsam onarla iyi geçirineğe çalıṣ-tır-dım, If I
  were in your place I should try to get-on well with them.
  Siz olsanız ne yaparsınız?, If (it) were you what would you
do? (‘ what do you do ’; the aorist yaparımz is more
vivid than the past aorist çalıṣtır-dım in the previous
example).
  Haftalık toplantılara pek gelmeyor, gelse de soğuk duruyor, He
doesn’t come much to the weekly meetings, and if he
does come he looks coldly on (stands cold).
  Yarın gelsem olmaz mı? Won’t it do if I come to-morrow?
  Gitsen mi? Should I go?

(3) ‘ Whether A or B happens, C follows.’

The conditional of the verb is used, with de/da (§ 95) in both
‘ if ’-clauses:

Yağmur yağsa da yağmaza da yola çıkmalsınız, Whether it rains
or not, you ought to go out (both if it should rain and
if it should not rain).
Biletçi 'Ayakta da olsan vereceksin. Otursan da vereceksin' dedi,
The conductor ('ticket-man') said, 'If you're standing
(on foot) you'll pay, and if you're sitting down you'll
pay'.

(4) Unfulfilled conditions: 'if A happened/had happened
(but it doesn't/didn't), then B would follow/would have followed'.
The past conditional is used; this is formed by adding the di-
past of 'to be' to the conditional base: ol-sa-m, 'if I should be';
ol-sa-ydim (olsa idi m), 'if I had been, if I were'.
Examples:

Elımde olmuş olsaydı buraya gelmezdim, If it had been (were
having-been) in my hand(s), I shouldn't have come here.
Herkes bunlar gibi düşün-se idi, şimdi hanginiz dünya-da olur-
dunuz? If everybody had thought like these people,
which of you would be in the world now?

(5) 'If only...!' Types 2 and 4 may express wishes, often
introduced by keşki or keşke:

Keşki gelseler! If only they would come!
Keşke gelseydiler! If only they came, had come!

(6) 'Although.' A conditional verb followed by de/da gives
the sense of 'although':

Gittim-se de onu görmedim, Although I went I didn't see him.
Koşuyor-sa da geç kalacak, Although he's running, he's going
to be late.

(7) 'Whoever, whenever, whatever.' Sentences introduced by
such words are treated as conditionals in Turkish. The relation
between the two ideas is seen in the English 'If anyone comes (or
'whoever comes'), say I'm out'; 'If I go anywhere (wherever
I go) he follows me'.

Her ne ister-se yapsun, Let him do whatever he wants (for
her see § 131).
Siz ne kadar ez-îl-îyor-samz biz de o kadar eziliyor-uz, We're
being squashed just as much as you are (whatever amount
you are being squashed, we too are being squashed that
amount).
Kim çalışsrsa kazanır, Whichever works, wins.
Ne olursa olsun, Be it as it may (Let it be whatever it is).
(8) Conditional verb expressing commands. We sometimes use an ‘if’-sentence to express a command or request: ‘If you’ll kindly step this way’. Turkish makes a similar use of the conditional verb, usually followed by an unaccented e/a, this being simply a vocative noise, like our ‘Oh’ in ‘Oh, do shut up!’ Otur-sanız a! ‘Do sit down!’ Dinle-seniz e, ‘Do listen!’ (‘Oh, if you’d listen.’) Baksan a! ‘Do look!’ This may be impatient or courteous, according to the speaker’s tone.

(9) Other types of conditional sentence. The two following examples illustrate two common ways of expressing an English ‘if’-sentence. It will be noticed that neither contains a conditional verb. The first type is colloquial.

Ahmet değil de kim-dir? If it isn’t Ahmet, who is it? (It is not A. [all right then] and who is it?).
Orada bulmadalar mı buraya gelirler, If they don’t find it there, they come here (Have they not found there? They come here).

Note (i): eğer is sometimes used to introduce conditional verbs; it does not affect the translation: (Fğer)hava güzel olursa gezmeye çıkaranız, ‘If the weather is fine we’ll go out for a walk’.

Note (ii): Here are some common expressions containing a conditional verb: . . . ise, ‘As for’: Hikmet ise, pek tembeldir, ‘As for Hikmet, he’s very lazy’ (‘if-it-is H. [you’re asking about] . . .’). Ne ise, ‘Well, anyway’. Nerede ise, ‘soon’. Öylese (öyle ise), ‘if so, in that case’. Hiç olmazsa, ‘At least’ (‘if-it-is-not nothing’). Zannedersem, ‘I think’ (parenthetica). Bilse bilse o bilir, ‘If anyone knows, he will’. Olsa gerek, ‘it must be’ (‘if-it-be, then it is as it should be’). Allâsın (colloquial), ‘For heaven’s sake!’ (for Allahı sevesen, ‘if-you-love God’).

Vocabulary 12

açılımak, to be opened, to clear
gelin, bride
güz, difficult
günah, sin
hâk (-ki), earth
ihmal etmek, to neglect
ilâve etmek, to add
ihtimat (-dt), reliance
kâfi, sufficient

(weather)

-e alışmak, to grow accustomed to
bağ, orchard, vineyard
çeşme, remedy
dağ, mountain
dert (-di), trouble, pain
devir (-uri), period, epoch

Sev, seni seveni, hâk ile yeksan olsa;
Sevme, seni sevmiyen, Mısır da sultan olsa.

(B) Translate into Turkish: (1) You are of the age to distinguish good and bad. (2) Although I said ‘I’m not going’, they insisted. (3) If he doesn’t know, let him ask. (4) As for my brother, he never goes there. (5) If (only) they knew what sort of man he is! (6) If he doesn’t come by one o’clock, don’t wait. (7) Do be quiet! Do listen! (8) She does whatever she wishes. (9) If anyone knows why Hasan hasn’t come to school to-day, Orhan will know; go ask him. (10) Come what may I must finish this letter.
LESSON THIRTEEN

159. The Verb: Subjunctive

The subjunctive form of the verb expresses not actual happenings but wishes, concepts whose realization is desired. The base is -(y)e/-(y)a, to which the Type IV endings are added. The rule stated in § 88, Note, does not apply to the subjunctive.

*ol-a-ym*, may I be, let me be, that I may be
*ol-a-sun*, mayest thou be, that thou mayest be
*ol-a*, may he be, that he may be
*ol-a-lm*, may we be, let us be, that we may be
*ol-a-smiz*, may you be, that you may be
*ol-a-lar*, may they be, that they may be

So from *gelmek*: *geleyim, gelesin, gele, gelelim, gelesiniz, geleler*. 'may I, etc., come'.

Only the 1st persons, singular and plural ('I, we'), are in regular use. The 2nd persons are uncommon, while the 3rd survives only in a few stereotyped expressions (see Note). In place of the 3rd person subjunctive, the 3rd person of the imperative is used—*olsun, gelsin*.

In conversation, *ye/ya* is often dropped from the subjunctive of vowel-stems: *söyleyim* for *söyle-ye-yim*, 'let me say'; *başlayment* for *başla-ya-yim*, 'let me begin'. *Yapim* is often heard for *yap-a-yim*, 'let me do'. Note also *napalim?* for *ne yapalim?* 'what are we to do?'

The past subjunctive is formed, like the past conditional, by adding *idim*, etc., to the base:

*olaydim, olaydin, olaydı, olaydır, olaydınız, olaydular.*
*geleydim, geleydin, geleydi, geleydi, geleydiniz, geleydiler.*

It is used for hopeless wishes, often prefixed by *keşi* or *keşke*; cf. § 158 (5). In this sense the conditional is more common in the spoken language. In Example 8 below we have the conditional and the subjunctive side by side, with no perceptible difference of meaning. Sometimes the subjunctive is used in 'if' sentences; Example 9 shows how this comes about.
Examples:

(1) *Pencere-yi açayım mı?* May I open the window?
(2) *Lütfen bir dakika bekleyinizi bir gazete alayım,* Please wait a minute (so) that I may buy a paper.
(3) *İster misiniz size de oku-ya-yım?* Do you want me to read to you? (Do you want I should . . .?)
(4) *Gidelim, let’s go; bakalım, let’s look.*
(5) *Biletsiz kal-mı-yalı mı?* (Let-us-not-remain ticket-less), Any more fares please?
(6) *Neresi ucuz ki orası pahalı olmasın?* What-place is cheap, that that-place should-not-be dear? (i.e., Of course it’s dear; what place isn’t?)
(7) *Kurşundakini ne Sanıyorsun?—Ne Sanıyoram Sanayıyım!* (What do you think the-one-facing-you?—Whatever I think let-me-think), Who do you think you’re talking to?—Never you mind what I think!
(8) *Keşke gel-me-ye-ydiniz. Yıhut ki ben sizi gör-me-se-ydim!* Would that you had not come! Or that I had not seen you!
(9) *Bil-e-ydim buraya kadar gelmezdim, If I’d only known (Would-that-I-had-known), I’d not have come this far (as-far-as to-here).
(10) *Oturdum ki biraz dinlen-i-yım or Biraz dinleneyim diye oturdum, I sat down so that I might (may) rest a little.
(11) *Gelmediniz; bari bu haber gönder-e-ydiniz, You didn’t come; you might at least have sent a message.*

Note: *Allah vere, ‘God grant’; Allah vere de yağmur yağmasa* (**‘May God give and if-only-it-doesn’t-rain’;**), ‘I hope to goodness it doesn’t rain’. *Hayrولا* (*Hayır ola, ‘may there be good’), ‘Nothing wrong I hope.’

160. *Ki*

We have met this equivalent for ‘that’ in §§ 152, 159. It is written as a separate word, and in speech is never accented, thus being easily distinguishable from the suffix -ki (§ 98).

(1) *Bir adam ki nasıhat dinlemez — Nasıhat dinle-mi-yen bir adam,* a man that doesn’t listen-to advice’.
(2) *Herkes bilir ki dünyı yuvarlarak-tır = dünyı-nun yuvarlak oldu-ğ-u-nu herkes bilir,* ‘Everyone knows that the world is round’.
(3) *Öyle senli benli görüşülerlardi ki görenler kırk yıllık ahbap samırdı,*
'They were conversing so informally that the beholders thought (them) forty-year friend(s)'.

(4) Very often in sentences beginning with öyle or o kadar, 'so, so much', the explanatory words after ki are left to the imagination. O kadar eğlendik ki! 'We had so much fun that (I can't begin to tell you)!' The English idiom is to omit the 'that' as well. The film-title 'How Green Was My Valley' became in Turkish Vadim o kadar yeşildi ki ('My wadi was so green that . . . '). An intermediate stage may be seen in such a sentence as Öyle bir şeyek oldu ki sormayın, 'Such a heat happened that—don't ask!'; i.e., 'I can't begin to tell you how hot it was'.

(5) Note also these examples where ki is left hanging:

Dün tramwayda-yız. Hangi gün değiliz ki. Yesterday we're * on the tram. Which day aren't we, that (I should single out yesterday?)'; i.e., 'as when are we not?

Bir kadın ses-i : Ne çekiyor-sun kol-um-u herif? . . . Sustum. Bana ne? Ben kimse-nin kolumu çekmedim ki. A woman's voice: 'What are you pulling my arm for, scoundrel?' . . . I was silent. What was it to me? I didn't pull anyone's arm that (I should think she meant me).

161. POINTS OF THE COMPASS

The new terms are given in the left-hand column. Those on the right are the older terms, of Arabic origin, which are still current.

| kuzey, North(ern) | şimâl (-li), North |
| güney, South(ern) | cenûb (-bu), South |
| doğu, East(ern) | şark (-ki), East |
| batı, West(ern) | garî (-bi), West |

| şimâlî, northern |
| cenûbî, southern |
| şarkî, eastern |
| garî, western |

| kuzey doğu, North-east, şimâli şarkî |
| güney doğu, South-east, cenûbu şarkî |
| güney batı, South-west, cenûbu garî |
| kuzey batı, North-west, şimâli garî |

* Note the use of the present to make the narrative more vivid.
Note that the new terms are used both as nouns and as adjectives. E.g., ‘Western countries’ may be: (a) batı memleketler, (b) batı memleketleri (‘west its-countries’), or (c) garp memleketleri.

162. ADVERBIAL FORMS OF THE VERB

The following suffixes, all subject to vowel harmony, are attached to verb-stems, with y as buffer-letter after vowels.

(1) -e . . . -e

Denotes repeated action accompanying that of the main verb and by the same subject. Usage requires a pair of verb-stems when this suffix is used: geçe, kala and diye are exceptional (§§ 133, 152; see also 176 (3), (5), (7)). The accent is on the -e of the first verb of the pair; for this and for the doubling cf. § 96 (2).

Bile bile yalan söyler, He tells lies deliberately (knowingly).
Koşta koşta geldi, He came a-running.
Sora sora aradığı yeri buldu, With-constant-asking he found the place which-he-sought.

Instead of repeating the same stem, two different stems of related meaning may be used: Öksür-e aksur-a odama girdi, ‘Coughing and sneezing he entered my room’.

(2) -erek

Shows action accompanying or slightly preceding that of the main verb. It is often interchangeable with -e . . . -e, but does not connote repeated action:

Aşk grev-i yaparak öldü (by-doing hunger its-strike he died),
He died, having gone on hunger-strike.
Istemişerek or İstemiş istemişe gitti, Unwillingly he went.

The subject of the -erek is usually that of the main verb. The chief exception is olarak, which may be translated ‘as, as being, for, by way of’ or simply omitted in translation:

Türkiyeye ilk defa olarak bin dokuz yüz kırk sekizde gittim, I went to Turkey for (‘it being’) the first time in 1948.
Size şu kalemi hediye olarak veriyorum, I am giving you that pen as a present.
Bana yol para-st olarak on lira verdiler, They gave me 10 liras for fare (being journey its-money).

A colloquial alternative is -erekten.
(3) -ince
Action just preceding that of the main verb: ‘on doing . . .’
The subject may differ from that of the main verb:

_Bahar gelince çiçekler açar,_ At the coming of Spring, the
flowers open.
_Pencere-yi açıp Marmara'ya bak-inca karşısında Adaları gördüm,_
On opening the window and looking at (the Sea of)
Marmara, I saw the Islands facing me.
_Sizi görüncə tanıdım, _I recognized you at sight (on-seeing).
_Yüzbaşı 'nöbetçi nerede?' _diye sormuña şaşırdim, burada
olduğunu söylediğim, On the Captain’s asking ‘Where’s the
sentry?’ I was surprised (and) said he was here.
_Sizden kitabı istemiştin, (siz) ver-inci yince bir tane satın aldım,_ I
had asked you for the book; you not giving (it) I bought
one.
_buna gelince_ (coming to me), as lor me.

(4) -inceye kadar (-inceye dek)
‘Until’:
_Posta-çı gelinceye kadar bekledik,_ We waited until the postman
came.
_Hava açılıncaya kadar yola çık-mi-yalım,_ Let's not go out till
the weather clears up.

(5) -meden
‘Without, before’:
_Size sormadan kaleminizi alımıştın,_ I had taken your pen
without asking you.
_Sız olmadan yapamıyınız,_ We cannot do without you (you
not-being).

The sense of ‘before’ may be emphasized by adding _evvel or önce:_
_Ben gelnmeden üç gün evvel Könya'ya gittiğim, ‘He went to K. three
days before I came.’_
A less-common alternative form is _-mezden._
_Note: It is clear from the accentuation that the -me- is felt to
be the suffix of the negative, not of the verbal noun. Yet the
-den is felt to be the ablative suffix, which historically it is not:
hence the construction with _evvel, önce_ (§§ 101, 129)._
(6) -dikten sonra

‘After’: Mektub-u oku-duktan sonra geri verdim, ‘After reading the letter I gave (it) back’.

(7) -eli (-eli beri, -eliden beri)

‘Since’: Buraya geleli hiç mektup yazmadım, ‘Since coming here I’ve written no letters at all’.

The subject of the ‘since’-clause may be shown by inserting the requisite noun or pronoun: Bizi/Kız buraya geledi, ‘Since I/the girl came here’. Alternatively, the di-past may be used before the -eli form of the same verb:

buraya geldim geleli, since I came here
oraya vardınız varalı, since you arrived there
su kapıdan çıkıts çıkalsı, since she went out of that door

The negative verb with -eli is best translated as positive: Oğlunuz maçallah (§ 177) biz görmiyeli çok büyüms, ‘Your son has grown a lot since last we saw him’ (‘since we have not seen’).

(8) -dikçe

Denotes ‘all the time that . . .’ or ‘every time that . . .’ The exact translation depends on the context:

İnsan yaşa-dikça bilgisi art-ar, So long as man lives, his knowledge increases.
Kız gül-dikçe yüzünde giller açılır; ağla-dikça gözlerinden inceleyi açılımsız, It is said that every time the girl laughs, roses bloom on her face; every time she weeps, pearls are scattered.
Fil gibi, yedi-kçe yer, Like the elephant, the more he eats, the more he eats.

Her ‘every’ is sometimes added: Onu her gördükçe daha çok seviyorum, ‘The more I see him, the more I like him’.

gittikçe (as it goes), gradually
oldukça, rather, quite, quite a lot

(9) -meksizin

‘Without’: Bir dakika bile kaybettmekszin geldiler, ‘They came without losing even a minute’. -meden is commoner in this meaning.
(10) -mektense
‘Rather than’: Sinemaya gitmektense, burada oturup konuşalım, ‘Rather than go to the pictures, let’s sit here and talk’.

Vocabulary 13

abella, elder sister  
amma, but  
Avrupa, Europe  
boyun (-yru), neck  
bukmek, to bend  
cam (-m), mosque  
şabuk, quick  
yesme, fountain  
dahi, genius  
-devam etmek, to continue at, with  
düğün, wedding  
elbise, clothes  
evlenmek, to get married  
felaket, catastrophe  
goçmek, to change one’s abode, depart  
gunes, sun  
yele, behold, you see, there you are  
itmek, to push  
itiraz etmek, to raise objections  
zin (-zı), leave, permission  
kabul etmek, to accept  
hikmak, to push, prod  
kabablık, crowd  
kader, destiny  
kar, profit  
kul, slave  
lökma, morsel  
meğeri (with subjunctive), unless  
omuz, shoulder  
sayıklamak, to rave about, talk in one’s sleep  
sulmek, to shake, shrug  
sonmek, to be extinguished, go out (light)  
Tanrı, God  
yazı tura, heads (or) tails; yazı tura atmak, to toss a coin

Exercise 13

(A) Translate into English: (1) Meti, si alımı dört kuruşa alınan bir kumaş-ı (§ 165 (1)) kaça satmalıdır ki her metresinde yüzde sekiz kâr bırakın? (2) Bu iş, bitmiyecık, meğerki siz de yardım ed-e-siniz. (3) Evlen dik evleneli hiç sayıkladığını işitmedim. (4) Dünya dünya olalı son savaş (harp) kadar büyük felaket gormemiştir. (5) Başka elbise alınıyayım demiştim amma şimdi ıste arkadaşımın düğunu çıktı. (6) Kalabalığı ite kaka yarip vapura bindik. (7) Ben bu dunyadan, dahi’nin ne demek olduğunu öğrenmedim. (8) Naim Efendi omuzlarını silhti ve ‘ne yapalım, kader böyle imiş’ de-r gibi boynunu buktu. (9) Ablası Avrupa’dan dondukten sonra her şey değişmeye

(B) Translate into Turkish: (1) So long as the sun is not extinguished, life will continue. (2) Istanbul is being gradually left without trees. (3) I shall be able to read your article only after finishing the work I have in hand (which-is-in-my-hand). (4) Without eating a morsel of bread we had set out (had-gone-out-to-the-road). (5) Whenever the rain falls I always remember that day. (6) One does not enter a house without obtaining (taking) permission from-the-owner-of-it. (7) Some (as-much-as) two hundred metres to (in) the west of the mosque there is a newly built fountain. (8) Without raising objections he accepted what I said. (9) It's turned (the hour has passed) half-past seven; let's be quick; we'll be late. (10) Which day may I come to you?
LESSON FOURTEEN

163. **Adverbs of Time**

The English equivalents are italicized in the translation of the examples.

artık, ‘at last, this is the turning-point, any more’:

Artık yaz geldi, Summer has come at last.
Bktım artık, I’ve-stood-it-a-long-time-but-now I’m fed up.
Artık oraya gitemem, I shan’t go there any more.

dahu, ‘still, yet’; in negative sentences, ‘not yet’:

Daha yatıyor mu? Is he still lying in bed?
Mehmet daha burada mı? Is M. still here?
Daha gitmedi mi? Hasn’t he gone yet?
Bir saat daha (or Daha bir saat) beklemeli, It is necessary to wait one hour more.
Daha dün beraber oturup konuşuyorduk, Only yesterday we were sitting and talking together.
Daha şimdi burada idi, He was here just now.

hâlâ, ‘yet’, may be substituted for daha in the first three examples. See § 12.

ehemen, ‘at once, just about’:

O girince hemen ayaga kalktular, As he entered they at once rose to their feet (to the foot).
Ben hemen o sıralarda gelmiştim, I had come just about at that time.

In the latter sense, hemen is often doubled: İşler hemen hemen bitmek üzere, ‘The work is just about on the point of finishing’.

henüz in positive sentences = ‘just now, just’; in negative sentences = ‘not yet’.

Henüz uykudan kalkmıştır, I had just risen from sleep.
Dün gelmişler, ben kendilerini henüz görmem, They came yesterday (I’m told); I’ve not seen them yet.
yine, 'gene, 'again, still yet'. But in negative sentences 'again' is bir daha:

yine gitsin, let him go again
bir daha gitsin, let him not go again

arasıra, 'at intervals, now and then'.
bazına, bazıın, kinin vaktı, 'sometimes'.
bir an evvel, bir gün evvel, 'as soon as possible'.
bündan böyle, 'henceforth'.
daima, her zaman, her vakti, 'always'.
demin, 'just a little while ago'.
derhal, 'immediately'.
ekseriyele, 'usually'; umumiyele, 'generally, as a rule'.
erken, 'early'; geç, 'late'; ERGE, 'sooner or later'.
ertesy gün, 'the following day'; ertesi yıl, 'the following year'.
evelsi gün, 'the day before yesterday'.
eveldə, ilkın, ilkönce, 'first of all'.
geçen yıl, geçen sene, 'last year'.
gündüz, 'in the daytime'; gece gündüz, 'by day and by night'.
öbür gün, 'the other day'.
sık sık, 'very frequently'.
vaktiyle, 'formerly, at the right time'.
akısamleyin, 'in the evening': sabahleyin, 'in the morning';
geceleyin, 'at night'; öğleyin, 'at noon'.
akısamlar, 'in the evenings': sabahlar, 'in the mornings'.
kişin, 'in winter'; yazın, 'in summer'; (ilk) baharda, 'in spring'; sonbaharda, 'in autumn'.

Note (i): The in of kişin, yazın is not the genitive suffix but an old instrumental case-ending.

Note (ii): saat ('hour') also means 'point of time': O saat geldi, 'He came at that moment'.

164. THE SUFFIX -CESINE

This extension of the adverbial -ce (§ 96 (3)) is mostly attached to participles:

Vaka-yı kendi gözleriyle görmüşcesine anlattı, He described the event as-if-having-seen with his own eyes.
El-im-i kopardıcasına siki, He squeezed my hand as-if-breaking-(it)-off.
Lesson Fourteen

165. Bir

(1) Nouns qualified by bir are not necessarily indefinite (§§ 56, 57): Gözlerimle oturacak bir yer ara-r-ken arkadaşım bana boş kalan bir koltuğ-u gösterdi, ‘While I was looking round for (‘while-seeking with-my-eyes’) a place to sit, my friend showed me an armchair (or ‘seat in the stalls’) which remained vacant’. yer really is indefinite and remains in the absolute case, while the koltuk, being adequately defined, takes the definite object ending.

(2) The fact that bir may often be translated ‘some, any’—
bir şey istiyor musunuz? ‘do you want anything?’—explains its use with plural nouns:

bir zamanlar (some times), formerly
bir şeyler mürdənərlər, they mutter something(s)

(3) We say: ‘Let’s have a coffee’; ‘Bring me a whisky-and-

soda’. This construction is more widely used in Turkish: Bana bir su (bir şay) getiriniz, ‘Bring me a (glass of) water’ (or ‘of tea’). Cf. bir şarapnel, ‘a (piece of) shrapnel’, in Military Extract 2, p. 160.

(4) As an adverb, it means ‘only, once’:

Bir gördüğümü bir daha unutram, What I have once seen I do
not forget again.
Her haftada bir gelir, He comes once a week.
Her şey bitti, bir bu kaldı, Everything is finished, only this is
left.

(5) şöyle bir means ‘just a bit’:

Şöyle bir gez-ıp geldik, We’ve just been for a bit of a stroll
(We’ve just strolled and come).
Önce şöyle bir düşündü, sonra otur-up iki mektup yazdı, First he
just thought a bit, then he sat down and wrote two letters.

(6) birden, ‘all at one go’: ilâ-ı birden içmelisiniz, ‘You must
drink the medicine all at one go, at a draught’.

(7) Note also:

birdenbire, suddenly
ikide bir(de), frequently
bir varmış bir yokmuş, once upon a time (once there was and
once there wasn’t)

N.B. iki günde bir, ‘Every third day’.

166. The 3rd-person-posseSSive Suffix

The student will by now have an idea of the enormous pat' played in Turkish by the suffix -(s)i. To summarize: it may relate the word to which it is attached (a) to a preceding word in the genitive case: Bu kitab-un bir nüsha-sti, 'One copy of this book'; (b) to a preceding word in the absolute case: Sovyet hükümet-i, 'The Soviet Government'; (c) to a word understood from the context but not expressed: Müdür, oda-sti nda-dir, 'The Director is in his room', i.e., müdür ün odasında. Bu söz yer-i nda-dir, 'This remark is appropriate' ('in-its-place'). Şu kumaş çok pahalı. Ondan daha ucuz-u yok mu? 'That stuff is too dear. Isn't there any cheaper (of it) ?' Cf. vaktinde, Exercise 8, A. (5).

The antecedent may be quite vague (cf. bir-i, § 131); it may be the whole circumstances of an action:

İyi-sti, hep beraber kalk-tıp oraya gidelim, The best thing to do is (the-good-of-it), let's all get up and go there together.
Hâsâl-i, ne yaptınsa fayda etmedi, In short (the-result-of-it), whatever I did achieved nothing.
Fena-sti şu-dur ki . . . , 'The worst part about it (the-bad-of-it) is this, that . . .
Doğru-su . . . ('the-true-of-it'), To tell you the truth . . .
Daha doğru-su . . . , To be more precise . . .
İcrab-i nda . . . (in-its-necessitating), If necessary . . . If need arises . . .
Daha aci-sti . . . (the more-painful-of-it), Still more painful is the fact-that . . .
Eski-sti gibi . . . (like the-old-of-it); As before, as of old . . .
Şura-sti da var . . . (this-place-of-it also exists), There's this point about it too . . .
Ora-st öyle (that-place-of-it is thus), That's so.
İnâd-i na (for-the-obstinance-of-it), Just to be awkward, Out of sheer cussedness.
Türkçesi . . . (the-Turkish-of-it), In plain language . . .
To put it bluntly . . . (Türkçesi, sen bu işi beceremedin, To put it bluntly, you haven't handled this matter properly.)

167. Other UsefuS Adverbs, Conjunctions and Particles

âdetâ, 'virtually, simply, pretty well'.
âferin, 'Bravo!'
amma, ama, fakat, lâkin, 'but' (lâkin is old-fashioned).
ancak, yalnız, 'only'. See Note.
Aşkolsun, (a) 'Bravo!' (b) 'It's too bad of you!'
Bâri, hiç olmazsa, 'at least, at any rate'.
... bile, hâlâ... 'even':

Beni bile aldattı, He deceived even me.
Daha kalkmadı bile, He hasn't even got up yet.
Hattâ gözümle görsen inanmam, Even if I should see it with
my (own) eye I shan't believe it.

For an example of bile and hâlâ used together see Exercise 14,
No. 18.

bilhassa, 'especially'.

dahi, 'also'.

elbet, elbette (both accented on first or second syllable), 'certainly'.

esasen, zâten, 'essentially, as a matter of fact': Zahmet oldu
de-me-yin, ben esasen gelecektim, 'Don't say it was a bother; as a
matter of fact I was coming anyway'.
eyvâh, 'Alas! Oh, dear!'
gerek...gerek(se)...; hem...hem...,... 'both... and...'
hakikaten, gerçekten, sahiden, 'truly, really'.

hem, 'and, and indeed, in fact': Gidiyor, hem koşarak gidiyor,
He's going; in fact, he's going at the double'. Hem de nasıl! is
exactly the American 'And how!'
ha? asks indignant questions: Bizi gormeden gitti ha? 'He's
gone without seeing us, has he?'
hâlbuki, oysa ki, 'whereas'.
hani, haniya introduces questions about something expected
which hasn't materialized or whose absence is regretted:

Haniya çamaşır-im? Where's my laundry then?
Hani gidiyordunuz? I thought you were going?

haydi, 'Come on!'

hele, 'at least, just': Hele bak, neler söylüyor! 'Just look, the
things he's saying!'

imdat, 'Help!'
mâdem, mâdemki, 'since, inasmuch as'.

megér, 'it turns out that...'. (with -miş, § 134): Megér ben
aldan-mış-im, ‘So I’ve been deceived!’ Note also meğerki, Exercise 13, A. (2).

meselə, ‘for example’.
mütlaka, ‘absolutely, positively’.
neyse, ne ise, ‘well, anyway’.
nitekim, nasıl ki, ‘just as, in the same way as’.
peki, ‘all right!’ Pekilə, madem biliyordunuz ne diye söylenmediiniz? ‘All right, since you knew, what was the idea of not saying?’

peki (for pek iyi), ‘very good, very well’.
sahi? sahi mi? ‘Really?’
sakın, ‘Mind! Take care!’
sanki (san ki, ‘suppose that’), ‘As if, suppose’:

Sanki sahiden öyle söylenmişim, ne çıkar? Suppose I really did say so, what of it? (what comes-out?).
Sanki ne olmuş? What’s supposed to have happened?
Sanki başka bir otel yokmuş gibi! Anyone would think there wasn’t another hotel! (Like as-if there wasn’t . . .).

tabii, ‘naturally, of course’.
veya, yahut, ya, ‘or’.

ya has a large number of uses, the commonest of which may be grouped thus: (a) ‘yes indeed’, (b) ‘and what about . . .?’ (at the beginning of a clause), (c) ‘isn’t that so?’

Examples:

(a) O da gelmeli imiş.—Gelmeli ya! They’re saying he ought to have come too.—Yes indeed, so he ought!

(b) Siz konferans-a gidiyorsunuz, ya ben ne yapayım? You’re going to the lecture; and what about me, what am I to do?

(c) Hani meyve alacakım?—Dun aldım ya! I thought you were going to buy some fruit?—Well I bought (some) yesterday, didn’t I?

ya . . . ya . . . veya (yahut) . . . , ‘Either . . . or . . . or . . .’
yani, ‘it means’: Gideceksin mı? Yani? ‘It means you’re going?’
yazık, ‘what a pity,’ Yazıklar olsun! ‘Shame!’
yoksas (‘if not’), ‘otherwise, or’.

Note: yalnız, ‘only’, but yalnız, ‘alone’; yalnız başına, ‘all by myself’.
168. The Suffix -esi

-esi attached to verb stems is an old form of future tense. Its chief use nowadays is in cursing, sometimes with -ce added:

*Kör olaştı(ca)! May he become blind!*

*Adı batasız! May his name sink!*

*İp-e gelesi(ce), May he come to the rope!*

Such expressions also serve as adjectives—*kör olaştı herif!* ‘The damned scoundrel!’—and nouns. *Adı batasız, in particular, is applied to diseases: Çocuk bu adı batasız-ya tutulmuş, ‘The child has caught this damnable-thing’.*

169. The Suffix -daş

Denotes ‘-fellow’: the vowel is invariable.

*arka-daş (back-fellow), friend

din-daş (religion-fellow), co-religionist

meslek-taş (profession-fellow), colleague

vatan-daş (motherland-fellow), fellow-citizen*

The non-harmonic kardes, ‘brother’, of Istanbul Turkish, is kardas in local dialects; this for an earlier karın-daş, ‘womb-fellow’.

‘Namesake’ is adas, though one would expect a double d (ad ‘name’).

170. Diminutives

The following suffixes have the sense of ‘little, dear little’, occasionally ‘poor little’:

(1) -ciğ (this suffix throws the accent on to the first syllable):

*ev-ciğ, little house

anne-ciğ-im, mummy

baba-ciğ-im, daddy*

Adjectives ending in k must, nouns ending in k may, drop the k before -ciğ:

*ufak, tiny; ufa-ciğ, tiny little

yumuşak, soft; yumuşa-ciğ bir yatak, a lovely soft bed

bebek, baby; bebeciğ (more rarely bebekciğ), dear little baby

esek, donkey; eseciğ or esekciğ, little donkey*
With adverbs: şimdi, ‘now’, şimdiçik (colloquially simçik), ‘right now’; bu kadarçık, ‘just this much, this small amount’.

(2) -ce, like our ‘quite’, may increase as well as diminish the force of the adjective or adverb to which it is attached: iyi, ‘good, well’; iyice, ‘quite good, pretty well’ (distinguish from iyice, ‘thoroughly’—§ 96 (3)); seyrek, ‘wide apart; seyrekçe, ‘rather infrequent(ly)’.

(3) (1) and (2) may be combined: yakın-caçık, ‘very near, pretty close’.

(4) -çeçiz. Note especially adamçaçız, usually pityingly, ‘the poor chap, the poor wee man’.

(5) -(i)msı, -(i)mtrak. These are mostly used with adjectives of colour and equal our ‘-ish’. The a of -mtrak (also spelled -mtrak) is invariable, as a rule, though some people do subject it to vowel harmony.

sarı, yellow; sarımsı, sarımtık, yellowish
beyaz, white; beyazımtrak, beyazımsı, whitish
ekşi, sour; ekşımtrak, ekşimsı, sourish
budala, fool; budalımsı, foolish
argı, slang, argot; argımsı, slangy, slangish

(6) -si is used with nouns and adjectives to mean ‘-ish’: çocuk, ‘childish’; erkeksi, ‘mannish’; yılanı, ‘snaky’; yeşilși, ‘greenish’.

171. The Suffix -(y)ici

This suffix, attached to verb-stems, denotes regular occupation, habitual activity (cf. -ci, § 113): it may usually be rendered by the English suffix ‘-er’:

oku-mak, to read; oku-yuru, reader
dinle-mek, to listen; suyn dinle-yici-ler, honoured listeners
sat-mak, to sell; sokak sat-ıcı-stı, street trader
hastabakıcı, nurse (patient-looker)
haşerat öldür-ıcıi ilaç, insecticide (insect killer drug)
kuvvet ver-ıcı, bracing (strength giver)
gül-mek, to laugh; güldür-mek, to make laugh; gul-dür-ücü, amusing
Vocabulary 14

e bağlı, depending on  
beslemek, to rear, nurture  
bıçmek, to cut out (clothes), to reap  
bol, ample, abundant  
burun (-rnu), nose  
davet (-ti), invitation  
fazla, excessive, superfluous  
fiyat (-ti), price  
hoca, teacher  
hüzün (-znü), sadness  
karga etmek, to quarrel, have a row  
kekre, sour, acrid  
koğmak, kovmak (§ 19 (4)), to drive away, throw out  

koyun (-ynu), chest, bosom  
liyakat (-ti), worth, merit  
mal, property; -e mal olmak, to cost  
memnün, glad, pleased  
otomatik, automatic  
sra, right moment, turn  
-sokmak, to insert in, push into  
sual (-li), question  
tasarı, bill, draft law  
ucuz, cheap  
yanmak, to be burned (colloquially 'to be done for, have had it')  
yıl, snake

Exercise 14

LESSON FIFTEEN

172. Modes of Address

From the beginning of 1935, every Turkish family was obliged by law to choose a surname; the old titles Bey (‘Sir’), Paşa (‘Lord’), Efendi (‘Master’) and Hanım (‘Lady’), all following the name, were replaced by Bay (‘Mr.’) and Bayan (‘Mrs., Miss’), abbreviated B. and Bn. respectively. The new terms have not yet fully caught on, being little used except on envelopes, for official purposes and by tram-conductors and other minor public servants. For social purposes, Bay Hasan Türükoğlu and Bayan Şelâle Öztürk will be generally known as Hasan Bey and Şelâle Hanım. Beyefendi and Hanımfenendi are even politer alternatives. Note Mündür Bey, ‘Monsieur le Directeur’.

Efendi, formerly a title of royal princes, religious dignitaries and other literates, is still sometimes applied, e.g., to elderly manservants: İbrahim Efendi. It also means ‘gentleman’, just as hanım means ‘lady’. Efendim is used: (a) to ask for repetition of something not clearly heard—‘Pardon?’—even when addressing women or children; (b) to give one time to think between words: Her turlu meyva var, elma, armut, incir... efendim... portakal, ‘There’s every sort of fruit; apples, pears, figs... er... oranges’.

‘My friend’ is kardeşim (‘my brother/sister’). ‘My dear fellow’ is canım (‘my soul’) or azizim. Still more affectionate is iki gözüm (‘my two eyes’).

Although the harem is a thing of the past, there is still a trace of it in the number of alternatives for karın, ‘wife’: refîka, zevcê, âile (‘family’), hanım (Ismail’in hanım, ‘Ismail’s lady’), eşi (‘mate’, also = ‘husband’). A polite formula for asking after the health of the wife of a man of one’s own age is: Tenge hanım nasıl? (‘How is the lady my-brother’s-wife?’).

Distinguish very carefully between karıkoca (‘wife-husband’), ‘a married couple’ and kocakari, ‘old woman, old hag’.

173. The Arabic and Persian Element in Turkish

As has been mentioned in the Introduction, the fact that there are a great many Arabic and Persian borrowings in Turkish
need not worry the student, who when speaking his mother-tongue probably has no difficulty in using words like ‘recognition’, ‘geography’ and even ‘vice versa’ and ‘hoi polloi’, without necessarily being a Classical scholar. He may find it instructive, though not essential, to observe how most Arabic words are based on three-letter roots fitted to various vowel-patterns. Words containing the letters k-t-b, for example, all have some connection with the concept of writing:

\[
\text{kitab-}, \text{ book} \\
\text{mektek-}, \text{ school} \\
\text{mektub-}, \text{ letter} \\
\text{kâtib-}, \text{ secretary}
\]

(1) The chief borrowing from Persian syntax was the i which in Persian is used to link two nouns or noun and adjective, as in ‘Koh-i-Noor’, ‘Mountain-of-Light’. Although this method of joining words is the exact reverse of the Turkish method, it was extensively used in the official and literary language. One of the greatest achievements of the Language Reform has been to bring about the disappearance of this affectation except in a few set expressions. ‘Disappointment’, now hayal sukt-i-u (‘imagining its-collapse’); two Arabic words joined according to the laws of Turkish grammar) was formerly sukt-i-u hayal (‘collapse-of imagining’); the same words joined as they would be in Persian).

One use of the Persian construction which seems assured of survival in Turkish is seen in the word for ‘same’, ayn-i, which is in origin the Arabic ‘ayn meaning ‘very self, counterpart’ and the Persian -i meaning ‘of’: ayn-i adam, ‘the same man’, originally meant ‘the-very-self-of the man’. ayn-i yoldan geldik, ‘we came by the same road’. But to translate ‘the same as’, the Turkish 3rd-person possessive suffix is used: Bu gömlek sizinki-nin ayn-i-dr, ‘This shirt is the same as yours’ (‘of-yours its-counterpart’). The possessive suffix is often doubled in this use: Kumaşın aynısı kalmamış, ‘There’s none of the same cloth left’.

(2) A much-used Persian suffix is -hâne, ‘house’, usually contracted to -ne after a:

\[
kütüphâne, \text{ library (kütüph, Arabic plural of kitab, book)} \\
postâne, \text{ post-office (posta-hane)} \\
hastâne, \text{ hospital (hasta-hane)} \\
eczâne, \text{ druggist’s, chemist’s shop (eczâ-hâne, see (3) below)}
\]
(3) Some Arabic plurals are still in use (cf. our 'data, formulae, cherubim'): müskül, 'difficult', müskülât, 'difficulties'; zâr, 'person', plural zevât as well as zâlêr. Eşyâ, the Arabic plural of şey, 'thing', has a different sense from şeyler; it means 'furniture, belongings' (cf. 'I packed my things'). Eczà, plural of ciiz, 'part', means 'drugs, chemicals' or 'the unbound parts of a book'. Note the pseudo-Arabic plural gidişât, 'goings-on', from gidiş, 'manner-of-going'.

(4) Several Arabic plurals are used as singulars in Turkish: amele, 'workman', talebe, 'student', tuccar, 'merchant', are all originally plurals. The singular of the last is also used: tâcir, so 'merchants' is tüccarlâr or tacîrlêr. Cf. eşyâlar in Exercise 15, No. 8.

(5) The Arabic verbal nouns which, with etmek, make compound verbs in Turkish, retain their verbal force even without etmek, and so can have an object in the def. obj. case:

\[ \text{tefrîk etmek, to distinguish} \]
\[ \text{Renkler-i tefrik edebilir misiniz? Can you distinguish the} \]
\[ \text{colours?} \]
\[ \text{Renkler-i tefrik kolay-dir, It is easy to distinguish the colours.} \]
\[ \text{Konya'yı ziyaret ettik, We visited Konya.} \]
\[ \text{Konya'yı ziyaretimiz, our visiting K., our visit to K.} \]

(6) The Arabic preposition ilâ, 'to', is used between numbers: sekiz ila on beş milyon lira, '8-15 million liras'. This is the only preposition used independently in Turkish, as distinct from those which form part of Arabic phrases, like the bi- ('in') of bilhassa, 'in particular, especially'.

(7) In Arabic, adjectives are made from nouns by the addition of long i. In Turkish this long i is written with a circumflex accent only to avoid confusion with similar words (§ 12 (2)):

\[ \text{tarih, history; tarihi, its history: tarihî, historical} \]
\[ \text{ilim, science; ilmi, its science; ilmiî, scientific} \]

But—iktisat, economy; iktisadi, its economy; iktisadi, economic

Note millî, 'national' (millet, 'nation'), but millî, 'furnished with a spike' (milî; cf. § 86).

An unsuccessful attempt has been made to replace this useful suffix by -(s)el, with hardly any more justification than the existence of an adjective uysal, 'compliant, easy-going'; cf. uymak,
to conform'. One sometimes comes across *tarihsel*, 'historical', for *tariht*; *siyasal*, 'political', for *siyasi*; *ulusal*, 'national', (*ulus*, 'nation') for *millî*.

174. FORMATION OF VERBS

The following are the chief suffixes used to make verbs from other parts of speech (cf. our '-ize, -ify'):

(1) **-lemek**

göz, eye; *gözlemek*, to keep an eye on, watch out for

su, water; *sulamak*, to water, irrigate

tekrar, again; *tekrarlamak*, to repeat

hazır, ready; *hazırlamak*, to prepare

(2) **-lenmek** (the preceding plus the reflexive *n*—§ 137)

*hazırlanmak*, to prepare oneself

ev, house, home; *evlenmek*, to get married

can, life, soul; *canlanmak*, to come to life

(3) **-leşmek** (-lemek plus *s*—§ 150)

avrupa-li, European; *avrupalılaşmak*, to be Europeanized
dert, pain; *derileşmek*, to commiserate with one another

mektup, letter; *mektuplaşmak*, to exchange letters, correspond

bir, one; *birleşmek*, to become one, unite

olmez, not-dying; *olmezleşmek*, to become immortal

(4) **-(e)lme**

doğru-lmak, kısı-lmak, *yüce-lmek*, to become straight, short, high

az-almak, düz-elmek, *şog-almak*, to become small, orderly, numerous

Two-syllabled words ending in a *ğ* lose it before this suffix:

kiçük, small; *kiçük-lmek*, to become small

yüksek, high; *yükle-lmek*, to become high, to rise

(5) **-ermek**

With words of more than one syllable, only the first syllable is used before this suffix, which is added mostly to names of colours:

ak, white; *ağ-armak*, to turn white

sarı, yellow; *sar-armak*, to turn yellow

yeşil, green; *yes-ermek*, to turn green

kızıl, red; *kız-armak*, to turn red, to blush, to be roasted, or fried
(6) -(i)msemek
   su, water; susamak, to be thirsty
   mühim, important; mühimsemek, to consider important
   benim, of me; benimsemek, to appropriate
   çok, much; gögunsamak, to regard as excessive
   az, little; azımsamak, to consider insufficient

Note: Causatives are formed regularly: sula-t-mak, ‘to cause to irrigate’; canlan-dur-mak, ‘to revive, vivify’; ölmezles-tir-mek, ‘to immortalize’; düzel-t-mek, ‘to level, put in order’; kizar-t-mak, ‘to roast, fry’.

175. Formation of Nouns and Adjectives

The following list of suffixes does not aim at completeness but will often help the student to guess at the meaning of a noun or adjective from a knowledge of a kindred verb. To save space the infinitive ending -mek has been omitted.

(1) -gi
   çiz-, to draw; çizgi, line
   ser-, to spread out; sergi, display, fair
   duy-, to feel; duygu, feeling, sensation
   iç-, to drink; içki (§ 44), alcoholic drink

(2) -gen
   atıl-, to be thrown, hurl oneself; atılgan, reckless
   çekin-, to withdraw; çekingen, shy
   umut-, to forget; umutkan, forgetful
   çalış-, to work; çalışkan, hard-working

(3) -gin
   gir-, to enter; girgin, pushful
   kes-, to cut; keskin, sharp
   uy-, to conform; uygun, suitable
   kaç-, to flee; kaçım, fugitive

(4) -i
   ölç-, to measure; ölçü, measure, dimension
   öl-, to die;ölü, corpse
   yap-, to make; yapın, construction
   yaz-, to write; yazı, writing, article

Note: kazı ‘diggings’, coined from kaz- ‘to dig’, to replace the Arabic hafriyat ‘excavations’.
(5) -(i)k
   kesc-, to cut; kescik, cut, broken
   ac-, to open; akan, open(ed)
   boz-, to destroy; bozuk, destroyed, corrupt
   parla-, to shine; parlak, bright
   karış-, to become confused; karışık, disordered

Note: Birleşik Amerika Devletleri, 'U.S.A.' (§ 174 (3)).

(6) -im
   ol-, to die; olüm, death
   doğ-, to be born; doğum, birth ( doğumevi, maternity home)
   kaldır-, to raise; kaldırım, pavement
   iç-, to drink; içim, (one) drink (bir içim su, a drink of water)

(7) -inti
   süpür-, to sweep; süprüntü, sweepings
   ak-, to flow; akıntı, current
   sars-, to shake; sarsıntı, tremor

(8) -ç
   sevin-, to be pleased;  sevinç, joy
   kazan, to win; kazanç, gain, profit
   ığren-, to feel loathing; ığrenç, loathsome

176. Notes on Certain Verbs

(1) bulunmak, 'to be found, to be': Ankara'da bulunan bir arka-daşım, 'A friend of mine who is in A.', but Ankara'da olan bir vaka, 'an event which occurs in A.'

The construction of § 130 (b) is applied to other nouns beside the -mek infinitive, with bulunmak for the verb 'to be':

Onunla çok munakasa-da bulun'k, We had an intense
dispute with him (we-found-ourselves in much dispute
with him)
göndermek nezaket-inde bulduğuuz kitap, the book which you
were kind enough to send (pertaining-to-you-being in-the-kindness of to-send)

(2) buyurmak, 'to order', is used as a courteous substitute for other verbs:

Buyurun! Do please come in/help yourself/sit down.
Bize buyurmayız mı? Won't you deign to call on us?
Ne buyurduınız? What did you say?
(3) Yürmek, 'to stand', means 'to continue, keep on': (a) When suffixed to the -e adverbial form of another verb: yazadurmak, 'to keep on writing'. (b) More frequently it follows the -ip form: yazip durmak. (c) It sometimes follows in the same tense as the first verb: Bütün gün yazdı durdu, 'The whole day he kept on writing'.

durup dururken ('while standing and standing') means 'suddenly and without warning'.

şöyle dursun ('let-it-stand thus') means 'let alone': Cevap vermek şöyle dursun; mektubunu okudum bile, 'I haven't even read his letter, let alone answer (it)'.

(4) etmek and yapmak. 'The usual equivalent of 'to make, do', is yapmak:

O size hiç bir şey yapamaz, He can't do a thing to you.
Orada ne yapıyorsunuz? What are you doing there?
Bu makina çok gurultu yapıyor, This engine is making a lot of noise.

If a normally transitive compound verb is used without an object, etmek is replaced by yapmak: Masrafım hesap-ediyorum, 'I am calculating my expenses', but Hesap yapıyorum, 'I am calculating'. So, too, if the verbal-noun part of the compound is qualified: bana tesir etti, 'it influenced me', but bana yaptığı tesir, 'the influence which it had on me'.

Etmek translates 'to make' in, e.g., '10 + 10 make 20'—on, on daha yirmi eder—and 'to do' with words meaning 'good' or 'bad': Bunu yapmak-la fena mı ettim? 'Did I do wrong by-doing this?'

(5) gelmek, 'to come', used after the -e adverbial form of another verb denotes continuous action:

Bu işler böyle olagelmis, These affairs have gone on ('continued-to-be') thus.
yapagelmek, to continue to do

The sole exception is çikagelmek, which means 'to come up suddenly', not 'to keep coming up'.

With the ablative, less commonly the dative, of the negative infinitive in -menezlik (§ 129 (2)) it gives the sense of 'to pretend not to': şiitmenezlikten geldim or şiitmenezliğe geldim, 'I pretended not to hear'.


Lesson fifteen

Uyku-m geldi (my sleep has come), I feel sleepy.
. . . gõrecegim geldi (my-future-seeing . . . has come), I feel I must see .
Oyle gibi-m-e geliyor ki, It seems to me that . . .
Lazim geliyor, it is necessary.

(6) gitmek, 'to go': there is a common idiom with this word and the adjectives hos, tuhaf, guc, 'pleasant, curious, difficult':

Hos-unuz-a gidiyor mu? (Does it go to-your-pleasant?) Do you like it?
Pek hos-um-a gitiyorum, I don't like it much.
Tuhaf-un-a gitti. It struck me as odd.
Guc-um-e gitti, It offended me.

(7) kalmak, 'to remain, be left', is used after the -e adverbial form of other verbs:

Yas-tu, he was surprised: yayakaldi (he-was-left being-surprised), he was dumbfounded
Donmak, to freeze; donakalmak, to be left freezing, to be petrified

Note also:

Nerede kaldiniz? Where have you been?
Bana kaldinsa, If it is left to me, if you ask me.
Az kaldi (little remained), almost: Az kaldi aqlamağa başlayacağım, I was within an arc of starting to cry.
Kaldi ki . . . There remained the fact that . . .
Furthermore . . .

(8) olmak, 'to become', is used with nouns, particularly names of diseases, to mean 'to fall victim to, catch':

Tifo oldu, He's got typhoid.
Öksürük oldu, He's caught a cough.
Defolmak (to become repulsion), to clear off, Defol!
Hop it!
Cehennem ol! Go to hell!

Note also:

Olan oldu, It's happened now; there's nothing we can do.
Oldu olacak, The worst has happened; Oldu olacak bari ben de geleyim, Oh, well, in that case I may as well come too.
(9) uğramak, 'to drop in on, touch at, meet with', often of something unpleasant:
feldişet-e uğramak, to meet with disaster
hayal sukutu-na uğramak, to be disappointed (§ 173 (1))
tebir-e uğramak, to be postponed

The causative uğratmak is 'to expose to': Beni hayal sukutuna uğratınız, 'You have disappointed me'.

(10) vermek, 'to give', when joined to another verb-stem by -(y)i-, adds the notion of speed:

Gel-i-ver! Come quickly!
Ototobus dur-u-verdi, The bus stopped suddenly.
yaz-i-vermek, to scribble, to dash off

(11) yemek, 'to eat', is used of undergoing something, usually unpleasant:

tokat yemek, to get a box on the ear
yağmur yemek, to get caught in the rain
gol yemek, to have a goal scored against one

But:

miras yemek, to receive a legacy
rusvet yemek, to take bribes

177. GREETINGS AND POLITE EXPRESSIONS

Merhaba! 'Hallo!' (should not be used to older people or ladies).

Günaydın, 'Good morning'.
Hos geldiniz, 'Welcome'—answer Hos bulduk.
Ne var ne yok? 'What's doing, how are things?'—answer İyiilik sağlık.

Geceler hayrolsun or Allah rahatlık versin, 'Good night'.
Allaha ışmarladık (often pronounced Alasmarladık, 'We have committed to God') or Hosça kalm, 'Good-bye', said by person leaving—answer Gule gule, '(Go) laughingly'.

On being introduced: Muşerref oldum, 'I have become honoured'—answer Şeref bana ait, 'The honour (is) belonging to me'.

İnşallah (Arabic), 'if God wishes', used when making any plans, even for the immediate future: Bu akşam gidiyor musunuz yani?—İnşallah, 'That means you're going this evening?'—Please God!'
**Lesson Fifteen**

*Maşallâh* (Arabic), ‘whatever God wishes’, expresses admiration while at the same time warding off the evil eye. It should always be used when admiring children.

When seeing someone about to eat: *Afiyet olsun*, ‘let there be health, *bon appétit*’—answer *Ömrünüz çok olsun*, ‘May your life be long’, or simply *Teşekkür ederim*.

When refusing an invitation to a meal: *Ziyâde olsun*, ‘May there be superabundance’.

When a friend pays the bill or buys the tickets: *Kesenize bereket*, ‘Blessing to your purse’.

(*Sizde*) *kalsın* (‘let it remain with you’), ‘Keep the change’.

When your host offers you coffee he will probably ask: *Nasil içersiniz?* ‘How do you drink (it)?’ The alternatives are: *sade*, ‘plain’ = *şekersiz*, ‘sugarless’; *az*, *orta* or *çok şekerli*, ‘little-, medium-, much-sugared’.

When taking leave of your host: *Bendenize müsaade*, ‘Permission for-your-servant’. or *Bana müsaade*.

*Baş üstüne*, ‘On the head’, i.e., ‘On my head be it, It shall be done’.

178. **Doublets**

(1) We have met numerous instances of the doubling of words to denote intensity, e.g., §§ 96 (2), 99 (2), 112. Turkish is very fond also of using similar-sounding pairs of words, like our ‘kith and kin’, ‘moiling and toiling’. Cf. § 154 (3). Note also:

- *şoluk* *şoçuk*, wife and family
- *boy* *bos*, size and shape (of persons)
- *iş* *güç* (work-toil), employment
- *yalık* *yorgan* (bed-quilt), bed and bedding
- *yorgun* *argun* (tired-emaciated), dead beat
- *ufuk* *tefek*, small and trifling, *wads and ends
- *alaca* *bulaca*, all the colours of the rainbow

*Şoluk*, *bos*, *tefek* are not used except in these expressions.

(2) Words which imitate sounds are usually doubled:

- *şap şap öpmek*, to kiss with a smacking sound
- *horul* *horul* *horlamak*, to snore like a pig
- *tik* *tik* *etmek*, to tick, tap

(3) A common colloquial way of emphasizing an adjective is seen in *Babam zengin mi zengin*, ‘Is her father rich? Rich!’—rather like the American ‘Is he rich or is he rich?’
Vocabulary 15

binâ, building
bulut (-tu), cloud
cilt, binding of a book, volume;
cillî, bound
catal, fork, forked, ambiguous
çeşit, kind, sort
dede, grandfather
eksik, deficiency, deficient,
wanting
hunmâ, fever
idâre, administration
istifâde, benefit, advantage
kapı, gate, door
kat (-tu), fold, storey
konsolor, consul
koyun (-yuu), bosom
koyun (-yuu), sheep
kurtulmak, to be saved, escape
lezzet (-ti), pleasure, enjoyment
mâkul (-lu), reasonable
-e mecbur, obliged to
mevsûk (-ku), trustworthy, reliable
miktâr, quantity
mukâye se etmek, to compare
mühendis, engineer
mûrâcaat (-ti), recourse, application
nakletmek, to remove, transfer
nevi (-vî), species
oğretim, teaching, schooling
peş, the space behind anything;
peşinden koşmak, to run after it
(s 126)
silâh, weapon, arm
Sofya, Sofia (capital of Bulgârîstan, Bulgaria)
spor, sport, games
şahsan, personally
tamam, complete, perfect
tutmak (tad-), to taste
telgraf çekmek, to send a telegram, to wire
yavru, the young of an animal
zarf, envelope

Exercise 15

LESSON SIXTEEN

179. HOW TO READ TURKISH

The large number of adverbial forms of the verb makes it easy for the Turkish writer to ramble happily on, with an -ip, an -erek or an -ince linking one thought to the next, for line after line. Although most modern writers prefer to keep their sentences short, a practice now taught in Turkish schools, one must be prepared for reversions to type.

Here is a sentence from Beş Şehir, a recent work by Ahmet Hamdi Taşpinar: ‘Topkapıdaki Ahmediye camiinin caddeye yakın kapısından veya bu caddenin herhangi bir boş arasından, bir yığın yangın yerinin üstünden atlyarak gördüğümüz âbideler şehriyle, Yedikule kahvelerinden baktığımız zaman deniz kenarındaki sur parçalariyle büyük camileri birbirine âdet eklıyen mehtaplı manzara arasında ne kadar fark vardır.’

The first step is to glance over the sentence to get the general pattern and then to look at the end for the verb: oardu, ‘there is’. Now begin working back to find what there is: ne kadar fark, ‘how much difference’; arasında, ‘between’. In § 126 (5) we saw that nouns followed by this word are linked by iče; and there in the middle is şehriyle, ‘the city of . . . and’, the word before arasında: manzara, ‘scene’. Now we have the skeleton of the sentence; the difference between the city of something and the something scene. ‘City of’ âbideler, ‘monuments’; gördüğümüz, ‘which we see’; Topkapıdaki Ahmediye camiinin . . . kapısından, ‘from the gate of the Ahmediye mosque at Topkapı’. Then a phrase preceding and qualifying kapı: caddeye yakının, ‘near to the main road’; veya bu caddenin, ‘or of this road’; herhangi bir boş arasından, ‘from any vacant building-plot of it’; üstünden atlyarak (atlamak: § 88, Note), ‘by-jumping over-the-top’; bir yığın yangın yerinin, ‘of a heap of (§ 140) conflagration-place’; (şehri)-yle, ‘and’; mehtaplı manzara, ‘the moonlit scene’; âdet eklıyen (eklemek), ‘virtually linking’; büyük camileri, ‘the great mosques’; birbirine, ‘to one another’; sur parçalariyle, ‘with the portions of city-wall’; deniz kenarındaki, ‘which are on the sea-
shore’; baktığınız zaman, ‘the time pertaining-to-our-looking’; Yedikule kahvelerinden, ‘from the cafés of Yedikule’.

Putting it all together, and with only the changes necessary to make intelligible English: ‘What a difference there is between the city of monuments, which we can see from the gate, nearest to the main road, of the Ahmediye Mosque at Topkapı, or, by jumping over a heap of burnt rubble, from any vacant site along this road, and the moonlit scene which appears to link the great mosques one to another with the portions of the city-wall along the sea-shore, when we look out from the coffee-houses of Yedikule’.

An English author would probably make three sentences of it: ‘On the one hand the city of.... On the other hand the moonlit scene.... What a contrast between the two!’

180. For Further Reading

An admirable selection of annotated passages will be found in P. Wittek’s Turkish Reader (Lund Humphries), which has a vocabulary of almost 4000 words. When that has been worked through, the student should be able to cope with any modern Turkish work, with the help of a dictionary. The Oxford Turkish Dictionary, by Fahir İz and H. C. Hony, is in two volumes, Turkish-English and English-Turkish, and is particularly rich in the idiomatic expressions which are a part of the fascination of Turkish.

Advanced students will learn much from Türkçe Szölük, the Turkish-Turkish dictionary published by the Turkish Language Society (Türk Dil Kurumu) of Ankara. This work gives numerous examples showing the use of words in sentences, and contains all the neologisms one is likely to meet, even in books written at the height of the Language Reform Movement.

181. Poetic and Conversational Word-order

In poetry the rules of normal word-order may be relaxed to meet the demands of metre and rhyme; a sentence such as Yazın son yemiş-ler-i-ne daha doy-ma-nış-tık, ‘We had not yet had our fill of the last fruits of summer’, may become in poetry Daha doymamış-tık son yemişlerine yazın.

In conversation too, Turks, like other people, often depart from the strict rules of literary word-order. One tends to say first the word that is uppermost in one’s mind. Yaşın var! Kaçın
sağdaki kapıdan, ‘Fire! Get out through the door on the right!’
Kaçın is the important word, and cannot wait to take its proper
place at the end of the sentence. Sahib-i var oranın, ‘It’s taken,
that place’ (‘its-possessor exists, of-that-place’). Gitti mi
arkadaşınız? ‘Has he gone, your friend?’
There is a school of writers who use this essentially conversa-
tional freedom even in passages which do not reproduce conversa-
tion. The beginner will be well advised to adhere to the literary
order of words, in speaking and writing, until he has attained some
familiarity with the language.

182. Slang
The last sentence of the preceding paragraph applies also to
one’s choice of vocabulary. Turks are so unaccustomed to
Englishmen who can speak any Turkish at all, that the visitor
to Turkey will find plenty of help and encouragement when he
tries to make himself understood in Turkish. But few things
sound sillier than out-of-date slang, or slang used in the wrong
place. So if slang is to be learned at all it must be learned on
the spot and not from books. Anyone who has heard a visitor
from the Continent say to his hostess, “It was a topping party,
but now I must sling my hook”, will see the force of these remarks.

183. Summary of Verbal Forms
The table below shows the various combinations of the bases,
given in the first column, with the personal endings, indicated
by Roman figures (§ 66), and with those parts of the verb ‘to be’
which are based on the stem i-, namely idi, ‘he was’ (§ 82); i.e.,
‘if he is’ (§ 158); and umṣ, ‘he is/was said to be’ (§ 134).
A slanting line shows that the combination belonging in that
position in the table does not exist; e.g., the dubitative umṣ
cannot be attached to the definite geldi. Bracketed forms are
not much used.
The Type III endings occur only with the Imperative (not
shown here; see § 128), the Type IV endings only with the
Subjunctive.
The Type III endings occur only with the Imperative (not
shown here; see § 128), the Type IV endings only with the
Subjunctive.
To simplify the table, the combinations of imiṣ with idim have
not been included, e.g., geliyormüştim, ‘they say said that I was
coming’; gelmiş imiştim, ‘they say/said that I had come’.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Form</th>
<th>2nd Form</th>
<th>3rd Form</th>
<th>1st Person Singular Past Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>geliyor (§ 88)</td>
<td>gelivor (I)</td>
<td>geliyordum</td>
<td>geliyorsam</td>
<td>THEY SAY/SAY THAT: geliwormusum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gelir (§ 107)</td>
<td>gelim (I)</td>
<td>gelidim</td>
<td>gelirmem</td>
<td>gelirmisim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gelecek (§ 102)</td>
<td>gelecegin (I)</td>
<td>gelecktin</td>
<td>geleceksem</td>
<td>gelecekmisim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gelmeli (§ 153)</td>
<td>gelmeliyim (I)</td>
<td>gelmeliydim</td>
<td>gelmeliysem</td>
<td>gelmeliyismi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gelmis (§ 135)</td>
<td>gelmisim (I)</td>
<td>gelmisim</td>
<td>gelmisem</td>
<td>gelmis imisim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geldi (§ 81)</td>
<td>geldim (I)</td>
<td>geldiyim</td>
<td>geldiysem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gelse (§ 158)</td>
<td>gelsem (I)</td>
<td>gelseydim</td>
<td>gelseyismi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gele (§ 159)</td>
<td>geleym (I)</td>
<td>geledim</td>
<td>geleymisim</td>
<td>(that I may come)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Lesson Sixteen**

153
APPENDIX

GLOSSARY OF MILITARY TERMS

Note: in the Turkish words given below, the 3rd-person possessive suffix has been hyphenated, to show that, e.g., 'at the air base' is hava üssünde (§ 71).

Air base, hava üss-ü
Aircraft carrier, uçak gemi-si
Airfield, aerodrome, hava meydan-ı
"construcction battalion, hava meydanı inşa tabur-u
Air force, hava kuşvet-i
Royal Air Force, Krallık Hava Kuşvetler-i
Air raid, hava aşın-ı
Ally, müttefsik (-ki)
Ammunition, cephe
"dump, cephe deposu
Anti-aircraft battery, uçaksavar batarya
"gun, uçaksavar top
Anti-tank rifle, tank savar tufek
Arm-chair General, salon general-i
Armistice, mutâreke
Armour(ed), zırh(lı)
Army, ordu
Artillery(-man), topçu
"barrage, topçu baraj-ı
Attack, taarruz
to attack, -e taarruz etmek
Barracks, kışla
Base, ıs (-süsü)
"Camp, ıs kamp-ı
Battle, mühärebe
Bayonet, süngü
Bazooker, bazuka
Bomb, bomba
"Anti-personnel, personele karşı bomba
"Atom, atom bomba-sı
"H.E., yüksek infilâkı bomba

154
Bomb, Hydrogen, hidrojen bomba-şi
   
   , Incendiary, yangın bomba-şi
   
   , Napalm, jelatinli benzin bomba-şi
   
   , Smoke, sıs bomba-şi
   
   to bomb, bombalamak, bombardıman etmek

Bomber, bombardıman uçağı

Bombproof, bomba geçirmez

Bulldozer, arazi düzeltme makine-si, buldozer

Bullet, kruşun

Camouflage, gizleme, kamuflej

Casualties, zayıf (-ti)
   
   to suffer casualties, zayıf vermek
   
   dead (Turkish), şehit (‘Martyr for the Faith’)
   
   dead (other nationalities),ölü
   
   wounded, yaralı
   
   missing, (harpçe) kayıp
   
   prisoner, esir

Cavalry, süvari

Commander, komutan

Commando, akiçi bölüğü, komando

Conscript soldier, kur'a er-i

Convalescent Depot, nekâhet merkezi

Counter-espionage, casusluğu karşısında koruma

Defeat, mağlubiyet
   
   to defeat, mağlûp etmek, yenmek

Defence, müdafaa
   
   to defend, müdafaa etmek

Deserter, asker kaçak-ı

  to dig in, siper kazıp mevzilenmek, siper kazıp mevzi almak (‘to dig
trenches and take position’)

  to disembark, karaya çek(ar)mak (§ 1.51 (6))

  to embark, gemiye bin(dir)mek

Embarkation leave, bindirme izni

Enemy, düşman

  to enlist, join up, asker yazılmak

  to fight with, -le çarpışmak

Fighter, avcı uçağı
   
   , escort, muhafız (himaye) av uçaklar-ı

Flame-thrower, alev cihazı

Fortifications, tahkimat (-ti)
   
   to fortify, tahkim etmek
Front, cephe
   „ line, cephe hatt-ı
Gas, gaz
   „ mask, gaz maske-si
Ground forces, kara kuvvetler-i
Halt! Who goes there? Dur! Kim o?
   —Friend, —Yabancı değil!
Hand grenade, el bomba-sı
Headquarters, karargâh
Helicopter, helikopter
Hospital ship, hasta nakliye gemi-si
Infantry, piyade
Insecticide, haşerat öldürucu ilâç
Intelligence, istihbârât
   „ Officer, istihbârât subay-ı
Interpreter, tercüman
Jet aircraft, tephili uçak
Leave, izin(-zni)
   on leave, izindi
Liaison Officer, irtibat subay-ı
Lorry, kamyon
Machine gun, makinli tüfek
Manoeuvres, manevvolar-i
Medical Officer, askeri doktor
   „ Orderly, istihyye er-i
Military (adjective), askeri
   „ Policeman, askeri inzibat erbay-ı
Mine, mayn, mayn
   „ -field, mayn tarla-sı
   „ -layer, mayn salan gemi
   „ -sweeper, mayn tarayıcı gemi, arama tarama gemi-si
Mobilization, seferberlik
Mortar, havan toplu
Navy, donanma
Orderly, emir er-i
   „ Officer, nobelci subay-ı
Parachutist, parçaulyu
Password, parola
Prisoner of war, harp esir-i
   „ camp, esir kamp-ı
Radio navigational aids, uğusa yardım radyo tesisat-ı
Red Crescent, Kızılay
Red Cross, Kızıl Haç (-ç)  
Regular Army, muvazzaf ordu  
Reinforcements, replacements, takviye birlikler-i  
Rifle, tüfek  
Rocket. füze  
Sailor, gemici  
Self-propelled gun, zatülhareke top  
Sentry, nöbetçi  
   to post sentries, nöbetçi dökmek  
Shell, mermi  
Shrapnel, şarapnel  
Signal Corps, muhăbere sinif-i  
Soldier, asker  
Spy, tâşus  
Squadron (Air Force), uçak boluş-u  
   (Naval), gemi jilo-su  
Stretcher-bearer, sedye, tes'ereci  
Submarine, demizaltı  
Tank, tank (kt)  
   -obstacle, tank māma-ı  
   -trap, tank tuzağ-ı  
Tommy Atkins (Turkish equivalent), Mehmetçik  
Transit Camp, tranzit merkez-i  
Trench, şiper  
Unit, birlik, kita  
Volunteer, gonullu  
War, harp (-bi), savaş  
Wing, kanad  
   Right--of the army, ordunun sağ kanad-ı  
   Left--of the army, ordunun sol kanad-ı  

Army Corps, Kölörüdu  
Division, Tümen  
Brigade, Tugay  
Regiment, Alay  
Battalion, Tabur  
Company, Bolûk  
Platoon, Takım  
Section, Mangâ  
Battery, Bularya  
L.M.G. Group (Infantry), Manganın haşif makineli kısım-ı  
Rifle Group (Infantry), Manganın alev kısım-ı.
## TABLE OF RANKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Navy</th>
<th>Army</th>
<th>Air Force</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>British</strong></td>
<td><strong>Turkish</strong></td>
<td><strong>British</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admiral of the Fleet</td>
<td><strong>Note (i)</strong></td>
<td>Marshal of the R.A.F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admiral (Senior)</td>
<td>Oramiral</td>
<td>Air Chief Marshal (Senior)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admiral (Junior)</td>
<td>Koramiral</td>
<td>Air Chief Marshal (Junior)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vice Admiral</td>
<td>Tumamiral</td>
<td>Air Marshal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear Admiral</td>
<td>Tuğamiral</td>
<td>Air Vice Marshal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commodore</td>
<td>No equiv.</td>
<td>Air Commodore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Captain (Senior)</td>
<td>Alay</td>
<td>Group Captain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Captain (Junior)</td>
<td>Yarbay</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commander</td>
<td>Binbaşı</td>
<td>Wing Commander</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lieut.-Commander</td>
<td>Ön Yüzbaşı</td>
<td>Squadron Leader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lieutenant</td>
<td>Yüzbaşı</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Lieutenant</td>
<td>Üstçeğmen</td>
<td>Flight Lieutenant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A/Sub-Lieutenant</td>
<td>Teğmen</td>
<td>Flying Officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midshipman</td>
<td>Asteğmen</td>
<td>Pilot Officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No equiv.</td>
<td>A Pilot Officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R.S.M.</td>
<td>Astçeğmen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C.S.M.</td>
<td>Başçavuş</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C.Q.M.S.</td>
<td>Üstçeğmen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sgt.</td>
<td>Çavuş</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cpl.</td>
<td>Önbaşi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pte.</td>
<td>Er</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note (i): There are no exact equivalents of these British ranks in the Turkish forces. The titles Buysk Amiral (Navy) and Mareşal (Army and Air Force) are awarded to officers who have held a high command with distinction.

Note (ii): Although the table is correct for each Service, it contains, for reasons too involved to discuss here, a discrepancy in the relative ranks of the three Turkish Services: the Army Tuğgeneral is shown as being one rank below the Air Force Tuğgeneral and the Naval Tuğamiral, which is not the case. Service readers are asked to accept the table, discrepancy and all, as being based on the most authoritative sources available at the time of going to press.

Note (iii): Suba is the generic term for 'Officer'. Atatürklar are 'Junior Officers', from Assteğmen to Yızbasi inclusive. Binbasi to Albay inclusive are Ustsubâyıl, those above being collectively known as Generaller or Amiralier.

'Reserve Officer' is Yedel Suba.

'N.C.O.' is Erbaş. Regular N.C.O.s are called Astsubay, formerly Gedikli. There are no regular private soldiers.

Note (iv): Graduates of the Staff College are known as Staff Officers, Kurmay Subaylar, whether or not they are serving on the Staff; e.g., a Colonel who is a graduate of the Staff College and is commanding an infantry regiment is referred to as Kurmay Albay. 'General Staff' is Genelkurmay.

Note (v): To distinguish between Turkish officers of the Navy, Army and Air Force, the words Deniz, Kara and Hava respectively are put before the name of the rank, which then takes the third-person possessive suffix: e.g., Hava Yızbasi-u, 'Flight Lieutenant', ("Air its-Captain"), Deniz Yızbasi-u, 'Naval Lieutenant'; Kara Yızbasi-u, 'Army Captain'.

**Military Extracts**

1. Kızıllar, ağır bir toplu baraji hümayesinde Türk tugayı ve 35nci Amerikan alayının tutmakta olduğu 4 kilometrelik bir cepheye taarruz etmişlerdi. Muttetlik toplu ve havan toplarını, açıkları baraj ateşine komunistli Birleşmiş Milletler hatlarının takriben 80 metre yakınılarında durdurmuşlardır. İki saat siren şiddetli bir çarpmaya mutlak bir kızıllar çekmiştir.

kızıl, red                takribin, approximately
ağır, heavy               şiddet, violence
hümaye, protection        mutlakip (with def. obj case), subsequent to, after
2. Teyit edildiğine göre 5 Haziran perşembe günü Kore'de Birleşmiş Milletler idealı uğrunda çarpışmakta olan Türk Tugayının cephe hattındaki tahkimatı teşif eden Alay Komutanı Albay Nuri Pamir açılan düşman topçu ateşi neticesinde bir şarapnelin kafatasına isabeti neticesinde şehid olmuştur.

teyit etmek, to confirm, 
ideal (-li), ideal, kafa-tas-tı, skull (head its-bowl) 
teşif etmek, to inspect, -e isabet (-ti), hit on


vaha, alan, field, sphere of activity, 
tehlike, danger, enerji, power, energy 
ileri sürmek, to suggest (drag forward) 
tip (-pi), type, hareket etmek, to move 
yuz, face, surface, yakıt (-ti), fuel 
hâbiliyet (-ti), capability


aded, (see § 91 (3)) hedef, target 
idare etmek, to direct, tahribetmek, to destroy 
gâştlamak, to reveal, tecrube, experiment, test 
geyr (-yri), motion, travel muvaffakiyet (-ti), success

5. Kuzey Atlantik Paktı teşkilatı (NATO) Güney Avrupa Komutanlığı tarafından dün neşredilen tebligde, beş millet deniz

* This is the locative of ust, ‘top’. The d, in defiance of § 44, is to distinguish this word from üst, the dative of ust, ‘top’.
ve hava birliklerinin Akdeniz'de, mayın salma, arama ve tarama manevralarına başladıkları bildirilmektedir. Yunan birlikleri, Yunanistan'ın NATO'ya girişinden beri, ilk defa olarak bu manevralara katılmaktadır.

*pakt* (-ti), pact
*teşkilât* (-ti), organization
*nüşretmek*, to publish
*teblîg*, communiqué
*Akdeniz*, Mediterranean
*salmak*, to spread, lay

taramak, to comb
*Yunan*, Greek (qualifying noun: § 77)
*Yunanistan*, Greece
*katmak*, to add
KEY TO THE EXERCISES

Exercise 1

A. (1) From the bridge; of the houses; to the girl; from the money; on the steamer; to the buses. (2) We drank tea in the house. (3) I saw (some) girls; I saw the girls. (4) Ahmet went yesterday to Ankara. (5) I saw Ahmet yesterday on the bridge. (6) The steamer went from England to Turkey. (7) The bus went to Istanbul. (8) I took the coffee from the girl. (9) I saw a child on the steamer. (10) I gave the child an apple. (11) I gave the apple to a child. (12) The child went to the city.


Exercise 2

A. (1) Has your father gone to the station? (2) Our friend’s shop is in Galata, near to the police station (§ 65 (1)). (3) I saw him in the train, not in the bus. (4) I took a cigarette from my own box, not from yours. (5) I bought this book from your friend Ahmet. (6) This man’s house is not far from the station, it is very near. (7) He went to the cinema yesterday evening; afterwards we drank coffee in our friends’ house. (8) Is the new Director industrious? No, he’s not very industrious. (9) Their house is at Galata, isn’t it? -- Yes, near to the bridge. (10) I gave the box to this man, didn’t I? (11) The child is in his room. He is in the child’s room. (12) The neighbours’ houses. The neighbours’ house.

Exercise 3

A. (1) We wanted to go to the Istanbul Exhibition, but we had no time. (2) The police officials didn’t even look at my passport. (3) Your friends moved yesterday to another house, didn’t they? (4) We waited for you an hour this morning at the Islands quay; why didn’t you come? (5) He wanted to buy cigarettes, but the shop was shut. (6) Wasn’t there another shop? (6) There is an apple-tree in our garden, but this year it has given no fruit. (7) I saw your brother in the street, in an untidy get-up, coatless, hatless. (8) My bedroom is very damp. Is there an empty room in your hotel? (9) Unfortunately there isn’t. (9) Is the tall child the Director’s son?—No, he has a daughter, he has no son. (10) The Conqueror took Istanbul from the Byzantines in the year 1453. (11) The alcoholic drinks monopoly was one of the great works of the Republic (and) a principal source of profit of the State. (12) Haven’t you read the book called Our Village?


Exercise 4

A. (1) Why aren’t you going to the Islands to-day? Because the weather isn’t fine. (2) We were wanting to discuss this question with you. (3) My wife and I went round the Covered Market yesterday. (4) Did you come to Turkey by aeroplane or by steamer? (5) I’ve three tickets for this evening; you’re coming with us, aren’t you?—Unfortunately I’ve no time; I’m going to Ankara to-morrow morning (and) I want to go to bed early to-night. (6) On a rainy night, two horsemen were going along (‘on’) a lonely road. (7) I have not seen such a thing in my life. (8) There are 12 months in a year. There are 4 weeks in
a month. There are 7 days in a week. The names of the days are these (following): Sunday, Monday, etc. Have you learned these (preceding)? (9) Is there a city in the world as beautiful as Istanbul? (10) It is necessary to send this letter by airmail.


Exercise 5

A. (1) You are going to strive, weary yourself and at last be successful. (2) Whose is the black car which-is-over-there?—I don’t know; it’s certainly not mine. (3) Where’s your friend rom?—He’s like me, a Londoner. (1) Are you going to go to Turkey soon? —Not very soon; I shall go after the summer holiday. (5) Is your father going by to-day’s train or is he staying over till (‘remaining over to’) to-morrow? (6) Istanbul is both our biggest and our most beautiful city. (7) That picture is like the one in my room, isn’t it? Yes, but it’s more beautiful than yours. (8) Why did you sit and not help me? (9) Of those two ladies, the one dressed in black is the Prime Minister’s wife. (10) I wonder whether the Grand National Assembly will accept this motion? It won’t. (11) Weren’t you going to speak of this problem? (12) This morning I got up before my brother.

KEY TO THE EXERCISES 165

en güzel koku-lu çiçek güldür. (12) Nihayet geniş bahçeli bir ev bulduk.

Exercise 6

A. (1) Two teams of eleven people each. (2) You waited half an hour, we waited one and a half hours. (3) Who ate half of the bread? (4) I bought these oranges for four piastres each. The fruiterer wanted seven piastres each for some rather bigger ones (‘for a-little more big-of-them’); I found (this) expensive and did not buy (them). (5) The banks give 2½% interest on (‘to’) small savings accounts. (6) The first snow of the year fell yesterday. (7) When did the last World War begin?—On 3rd September 1939. (8) I’ll call again, perhaps to-morrow afternoon. (9) On 30th August 1922 the Turkish army won one of the world’s greatest pitched battles. (10) Travelling in the sleeping-car is doubtless a very comfortable thing. (11) Whose are the papers on the third shelf? (12) I believe I trod on your foot. I beg your pardon, I didn’t see.


Exercise 7

A. (1) The Bulgars are Turkish: it is the language which makes them Slav (‘them Slav making is-language’). (2) Whom did you ask about this? (3) But this longing is not simply a feeling which belongs to time past. (4) Reach me that book. No, not that one, I want the (one) standing on that shelf. (5) Your friend is the how-manyth of those standing in that file?— The sixth of them. (6) God protect the (one) remaining in the open in this season. (7) There are seven Mehmets in our Brigade; which-one-of-them are you enquiring about? (8) O Turkish youth, your first duty is to preserve and defend for ever Turkish
independence and the Turkish Republic  

Wait-for me here, I'll come in five minutes  

Inside ten minutes we began to talk familiarly with him  

I want to wait for my friends here, is it possible?—Of course it is, why shouldn't it be? (‘why let it not be?’) 

The view which meets your eye is the view of a natural fortification, with its pass between two flat hills.

B  

(1) Kopek ırsıracak gibi dişlerini gösterdi  

(2) O kadar hızlı yurumeyein  

(3) Şu fotoğrafları al đa benim masamin üzerine koy 

(4) Sark için ‘olumun sıruna sahiptir’ derler 

(5) Kitabını yapraklarını parmakla devil çakıla acınız 

(6) Hangi at burnu geldi? 

(7) Hamdolsun misiniz ıvi gidiyor 

(8) Geç kalmışın, erken gelsen 

(9) Kovundan çıkmamış koju bu meseleleri anlar mı? 

(10) Onlar bizden bu ça arist oiturulur.

Exercise 8

A  

1 I have gone to Izmir three times and by quite different routes each time (at the-three of them) 

2 Most of the girls who are entering now are very ugly (, this morning I bought two hundred chiefs. One of them is in my pocket but what became of the other, what it became. I don’t know 

3 I saw no harm in returning to (on to) this topic.) The doctor went round the patients, he told off the nurse who forgot to give one patient’s medicine at the proper time at its time I am not accustomed to listening to gossip 

4 I am intending to go (to go) I am in the intention of it to Istanbul Do you want to go too? 

5 The moon becomes evident from its rising the moon from his walking 

6 Both the ministers of Vahdetin and Mustafa Kemal himself are seeking pretexts in order to cross over to Anatolia. I for this motherland what things have we not done! Some of us have died some of us have made speeches

B  

(1) Sani sekize on yu siirt sekize on kahri siirt biri geyik geciveri siirt biri geyik gece saat dokuz, dokuz buğuc sularında gelikler 

(2) Bu cevi edebiyatımızda serif tutulma lavıtkan (3) Bugun Fizirüm i gitmekten vargeçtim (4) Beni dikkatle dinlememizi ıca ederim 

(5) Bu yuruyurse everine saat yediden everel varım olacagız 

(6) Bu para bir altın saat almaga yetmez (7) Bu is bu dakka surme? 

(8) Bu, benim otomobilimin almanıza sebeb toskil eder mi? 

(9) Bu ızi vapıman-ınya kim engel oldu? 

(10) İnsanlar yemek ıcin yaşamalar, yaşamak ıcin yetler
Exercise 9

A. (1) You will have read the article which came out in Ulus two days ago. You will have read it and been surprised. (2) Hush! Is that the way to talk in front of the child? (‘Is that sort of talk spoken by the side of . . .?’) (3) The newly built provincial government house will shortly be opened with a big ceremony. (4) A small piece of stick 10 centimetres long (‘in the length of 10 centimetres’) and 2 or 3 centimetres thick. (5) Two stones standing side by side with one metre interval. (6) Onto these stones a stick is placed, one and a half metres long, one or two centimetres in diameter. (7) They had received order(s) for the immediate arrest of the stranger (‘about his being immediately arrested’). (8) You like the orange, but you’ve certainly never eaten one like this (‘the-thus-of-it’). (9) General T.Y., who has (for) a long period served as commander of (‘having done the commandernesship of’) our Korea Combat Unit, is to be put on the retired list (‘will-be-set-apart to-the-pensioned’) next August. On the other hand (‘from the other side, moreover’), Colonel C.D., who has served as Regimental Commander of our Korea Unit, will be promoted this year to the rank of Brigadier (‘to-Brigadiership’).


Exercise 10

A. (1) The bad part of the business was this: this life had been lost, never more to return. (2) Are they not afraid of the coming of a day on which the account of these illegalities (‘lawless-nesses’) will be asked? (3) In the village, very few people know the official twelve months which are used in the city and which the villager calls ‘the Government month’. (4) In London, the War Ministry spokesman said that this sort of news was no more than (‘did not go forward from’) a rumour. . . .
The American Ambassador said that he had no information (‘his information not being’) about this news-item. (5) The Beauty Queen of Turkey was chosen last night at the Atlas Cinema. The cinema auditorium had filled up early. A good many people too had lined up outside to see the beauties who were about to enter for the elections. (6) The villages which are our object of study (with the exception of one of them which is as much as fifty-five kilometres away) are within a 20-22-kilometre area round the city of Ankara. (7) One of the incongruities of our life is also that although we live and amuse ourselves in Beyoğlu, we don’t like it, we find it ridiculous to mention it (‘is our-not-liking . . . our-finding’). (8) A gang of people, with Turkish money in their hands, are currency-hunting (‘are doing huntsmanship’) and chasing tourists in the streets of Istanbul.


**Exercise 11**

A. (1) In the darkness of night we boarded the goods train, under the impression that it was the passenger train. (2) There must be a hole in the ball: it’s always letting the air escape. (3) This jump caused him to lose his balance. (4) It means I’ve got to buy paper and pen and all the rest of it. (5) Those who were present looked-at-one another. (6) The persistence in these drinkers’ wanting to make those-who-are beside-them drink too, is not comprehensible (‘is not understood thing’). (7) Because he wrote a lot, they used to call Ahmet Mithat Efendi ‘a machine of (§ 141) forty horse-power’. (8) In the last message received from the ship, it was reported (‘in-the-act-of-being-made known’) that the ship had begun to be submerged in the waters. (9) Pasteur had discerned that, just as there was a virus producing (‘giving birth to’) every infectious disease (‘ill-ness’), there would
also be a virus of rabies. (10) The administration of the Sea Lines yesterday stopped the steamer ‘Seyyar’ from (making its) voyage, by an order whose cause is not (‘its cause-not-being’) clear. The ‘Seyyar’ will make its normal voyage on Saturday, the tickets sold for the steamer being valid. (11) They call the unit made up of 14 privates: ‘section’. (12) You should walk on the right, not on the left.


Exercise 12

A. (1) England, which has the greater portion of her territories overseas, is in no position to neglect the sea (‘is in the position pertaining-to-being-unable-to . . . ’). (2) When a new bride is about to come to the house, if the rooms are not sufficient, a new room is added to the house. (3) If the weather doesn’t clear by noon, we’re not going out. (4) If he will take the trouble to open and read the last page, he will see this. (5) Even without the rest (‘if the others were-not’), just this is sufficient. (6) If I had become accustomed to this pleasure, naturally it would come very hard now to give it up. (7) Whatever he says. nobody listens (‘the listener does-not-occur’). (8) The works of this period, although they are not worthy of (a) great reliance, can be counted as something in the midst of nothing (‘existent in non-existence’). (9) If only he came and told me his trouble! I would find a remedy for it. (10) If this war would only stop and then . . . ! What will happen if it does stop? (11) If you look after it it will become an orchard, if you don’t it will become a wilderness (‘If you look, orchard comes into-being; if you do not look, mountain comes-into-being’). (12) Love him-who-loves thee, if-he-be level with the earth; don’t-love him-who-does-not-love thee, if he be Sultan in Egypt.

Exercise 13

A. (1) For how much must one sell a cloth bought at 64 piastres a metre so that it may leave eight per cent profit on every metre? ('its-metre being-bought for 64 piastres a cloth for-how-much must-one-sell that in every metre-of-it in-the-hundred eight profit let-it-leave'). (2) This job will not end, unless you help too. (3) Since we've been married I've never heard him talking in his sleep. (4) Since the beginning of time ('since the world came into being'), the world has seen no catastrophe as great as the last war. (5) I hadn't intended to buy ('I had said let-me-not-buy') any more clothes, but now you see my friend's wedding has turned up ('come up'). (6) Pushing and shoving, we broke through the crowd and boarded the steamer. (7) I shall depart from this world and go, without learning what 'genius' means. (8) Naim Efendi shrugged his shoulders and bent his neck as if saying, 'What are we to do? Fate was thus.' (9) After his big sister returned from Europe, everything began to change. (10) Unless God grants ('God not-having-given'), what can the slave (i.e., mortal man) do? (11) Don't choose the radio which you are going to buy by the toss of a coin ('by-throwing heads-tails'). (12) I'll keep your place till you've smoked your cigarette.

B. (1) Güneş soutmedikçe hayat devam edecektir. (2) İstanbul gittikçe aşçıız kalıyor. (3) Ben ancak elimdeki işi bit-ir-dik-ten sonra sizin yazınız-ı okuyabilirim. (4) Bir lokma ekmek (§ 140) yemeksiniz yola çıkmıştık. (5) Yağmur yağdıkça hep o günü hatırlarım. (6) Bir eve sahibinden izin almadan girilmez. (7) Camiin iki yüz metre kadar garbında (batisında) yeniden yapılan bir çeşme bulunmaktadır. (8) İtiraz etmeksizin (etmeden) dediğiimi kabul etti. (9) Saat yedi buçuğu geçmiş; çabuk olalım, geç kalacağız. (10) Ben size hangi gün geleyim?

Exercise 14

(1) Let-us-not-talk as-if-quarrelling. (2) It turns out that we have been nurturing snakes in our bosom! (3) I am grieved while departing from A., just as my departure from I. made me sad ('had given me sadness'). (4) (I gather that) you were expect-
ing me for dinner, whereas I had no news of this invitation. (5) And what about your big sister? Won’t she be coming? (6) It’s too bad of you, (my) Teacher; I should never have expected this of you!—Nothing wrong I hope, my son? What has happened? (7) You at least should not have spoken thus. (8) So he’s pushed his nose too into this business, has he? (9) Mind you don’t forget what I say. (10) If once he sees, we’ve had it. (11) He was pretty well thrown out; we were saying, ‘He won’t come any more after this’; and now you see he’s come again. (12) Everyone has gone, only he has remained. (13) May his eye come out! (14) This is an unnecessary question, isn’t it? (i.e., Need you ask?) (15) The children’s clothes must be cut rather full. (16) There was a certain acidity (‘a sour-ishness’) in their manner which showed that they were not pleased at (‘from’) my coming. (17) A thing’s being cheap or dear does not always depend on the price it costs. (18) The official whose turn came (‘his-turn coming the-official’) used to be promoted automatically. According to what we learn, under (‘in’) the new Bill, officials will be promoted according to merit, not according to time: if need arises they will even be able to be promoted three times in one year.

**Exercise 15**

(1) With whatever weapons he arms himself let him arm himself, he will not be able to escape from death (i.e., let him arm himself as he pleases). (2) Oh dear! Things have got complicated! (3) We went round from door to door (‘door door’) and sought him. (4) Last night one of my grandfather’s sheep lambed. (5) He folded the letter into (‘to’) two in order to put it into the envelope. (6) The weather’s getting cloudy. I expect it’s going to rain. (7) One person was missing; now we’re up to strength (‘we-have-completed-ourselves’). (8) I want to wire there for them to send (‘for their-sending’) my things. (9) They call people who have no employment (‘his-work his-toil not-being’) and roam here and there, ‘Pavement Engineer’ (i.e., tramp, cf. our ‘milestone inspector’). (10) The unbound parts of this book are sold for 50 k. less (‘for the deficiency of 50 k.’) than the bound version (‘than-the-bound-of-it’). (11) Manuscript and print, all kinds of old books are bought. Books in large quantity are bought on the spot (‘in-its-place’), a man being sent. Application to our office (‘administration-house’) in person or by
letter. (12) The games and library rooms of the building are to be kept open as formerly for the benefit of the young (‘youth’). (13) My grandfather fell-asleep-suddenly while reading his newspaper. (14) You are comparing these two things but this comparison which you are making is not appropriate. For the things which you are comparing (‘pertaining-to-your-making their-comparison’) are not of the same species. (15) Those who have finished the age of six by the end of September every year are obliged to continue at elementary (‘first’) school until the end of the school year in which they complete (‘pertaining-to their completing’) the age of fourteen. (16) Rather than to run after an impossible thing (‘a work which will-not-be’), it is doubtless more reasonable at once to-taste-quickly the pleasure of life wherever one finds it (‘in-the-place pertaining-to-its-passing to-the hand’). (17) According to what has been made known from reliable sources, the Varna Consulate having been transferred to the Sofia Consulate, the two Consulates have been amalgamated (‘made-to-become-one’). (18) She used often to be taken ill and as soon as the fever began she would rave-about the waters of Istanbul.

Military Extracts

1. Under cover of a heavy artillery barrage, the Reds had attacked a 4-kilometre front which the Turkish Brigade and the 35th American Regiment were holding. Allied artillery and mortars, with the barrage fire which they opened, stopped the Communists some 80 metres away from the United Nations lines. After a violent engagement which lasted two hours, the Reds withdrew.

2. It has been confirmed that (‘according to what is confirmed’) the Regimental Commander Colonel Nuri Pamir, who was inspecting the front-line fortifications of the Turkish Brigade which is fighting in Korea for the sake of the ideal of United Nations, was killed (‘became martyr’) on Thursday 5th June as the result of a piece of shrapnel’s hitting his skull, as the result of the enemy artillery fire which was opened.

3. Up to last year, it was suggested that atom bombs could be used (‘their-future-being-able-to-be-used was suggested’) only in the strategic sphere (and) that their use (‘their-being-used’) in the tactical sphere would be dangerous not only for the enemy but also for (one’s) own units. Now, however (‘as for now’), it is
revealed that a good many types of atomic weapons and bombs have (been) begun to be made, including ('as far as') tactical atomic weapons which, infantry, too, will be able to use. . . . Next, it is revealed that the manufacture has begun of aircraft carriers driven by ('moving by') atomic energy, submarines driven by atomic energy (and) war-planes driven by atomic energy, and that these aircraft carriers will be capable of going round the world ('will be in-the-capability pertaining to future-being-able-to-go . . .') without-taking fuel from anywhere, and these submarines (ditto) without coming up at all to the sea surface.

4. It is revealed that by the year-end the U.S. Army ('the army of United America') will possess 1000 radar-directed rockets. These rockets, which have been named 'Nike' ('the name of N. being-given these rockets'), find the target of their own accord while in flight ('while in the state of motion') and destroy it. Tests carried out at the base in New Mexico have been highly successful.

5. In the communiqué published yesterday by the Southern Europe Command of the North Atlantic Pact organization (NATO), it is announced that sea and air units of five nations have begun mine-laying and -sweeping manoeuvres in the Mediterranean. For the first time since Greece's entry into NATO, Greek forces are joining ('are being added to') these manoeuvres.
INDEX OF SUFFIXES

Of suffixes liable to the fourfold vowel-harmony, only the forms in i are shown; of those liable to the twofold harmony, only the forms in e. If you find an unaccountable i, t, ü or u before y, remember that it may be for an original e or a (§ 88, Note). The buffer-letter y is not shown. Suffixes which may begin with ç or ş, d or t, will be found under c and d. Thus, if you are looking up the suffixes of bakamıyarak, you will have to seek the -yarak under -erek, the -amı- under -eme. For the -tur of bozuktur, see -dir; for the -yu of Ankara’yı, see -i; for the -sün of görsün, see -sin; for the -ça of hasça, see -ce. The numbers refer to paragraphs. See also §§ 174, 175.

-əsər, 127
-beri, 101
-ce, 96, 137 (8), 168, 170
-ceğiz, 170
-cesine, 164
-ci, 113
-cik, 170
-çiın, 94
-duş, 169
-de, 60, 111, 141, 144 (ç), 176 (1)
-den, 61, 100, 144 (d)
-di, 81
-diğ-, 143, 144
-dik, 81, 142
-dikçe, 162
-dikleri, 143, 144
-dikten, 162
-dim, 81
-dın(ız), 81
-dir, 67, 135 (4), 151
-e, 59, 115, 116, 144 (b), 151 (8),
     152, 162
-ebil, 146
-eceğ-, 102, 123, 143, 144

-ecek, 102, 123, 156
-ecekleri, 143, 144
-edur, -eğel, -ehal, 176
-el, 173 (7)
-eler, 159
-eli, 162
-elim, 159
-eme, 147
-en, 121
-er, 105, 112, 123, 151
-erek, 162
-esi(ce), 168
-esin(ız), 159
-eyim, 159
-hane, 173 (2)
-i, 57, 71, 131, 166, 173 (7)
-ı, 173 (7)
-ici, 171
-il, 137
-im, 67, 70, 71
-imiz, 71
-imsi, imtrak, 169
-in, 58, 71, 128, 137, 163
-ince, 96 (3), 162

174
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-inci</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-inde</td>
<td>106, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-inden</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ine</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ini</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-inin</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-iz</td>
<td>71, 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ip</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ir</td>
<td>105, 123, 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-isi</td>
<td>131, 173 (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-is</td>
<td>129, 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-it</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-iver</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-iz</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ken</td>
<td>108, 152 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ki</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-le</td>
<td>94, 95, 126 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ler</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-leri</td>
<td>71, 163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-leyin</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-li</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lk</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-m</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-me</td>
<td>83, 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-meden</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mek</td>
<td>79, 119, 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-meklik</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-meksizin</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mekstense</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-meli</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-menezlik</td>
<td>129, 176 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mez</td>
<td>106, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mezlik</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-miş</td>
<td>122, 134, 135, 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-miz</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mit</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mitrak</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-n</td>
<td>70, 71, 92, 96, 98, 131, 132, 137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nci</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ne</td>
<td>173 (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nin</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-niz</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-r</td>
<td>105, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-re</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-se, -sek</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sel</td>
<td>173 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sem, -sen, -seniz</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-si</td>
<td>71, 166, 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sin</td>
<td>67, 128, 159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-siniz</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-siz</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-s</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-şer</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-şir</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-t</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-yor</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>